

I give consent to this copy of my thesis, when deposited in the University Library, being available for loan and photocopying.

Date *1<sup>st</sup> July 1969* ..... Signed .....



BESSEL FUNCTIONS OF MATRIX ARGUMENT  
WITH STATISTICAL APPLICATIONS

by

BRIAN G. LEACH

B.Sc. (Hons.) (Adel.)

Thesis submitted for the Degree of  
Doctor of Philosophy  
in the University of Adelaide,  
Department of Statistics,  
June, 1969.

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

Summary	v
Signed Statement	viii
Acknowledgements	ix
Chapter 1: Introduction	1
1.1 General	1
1.2 Historical	5
1.3 Review of problems considered	8
1.4 Notation	10
Chapter 2: The Asymptotic Formula for ${}_0F_1^{(m)}\left(\frac{1}{2}n; \frac{1}{2}\Omega, W\right)$	14
2.1 Introduction	14
2.2 As a function of the latent roots	15
2.3 ANDERSON'S method	17
2.4 Reduction to a Poisson type integral	20
2.5 The classical approach generalised	23
2.6 Finding the maxima	26
2.7 Approximating the integral	35
2.8 Proving the expansion	38
2.9 Summary	42
Chapter 3: Statistical Applications	44
3.1 Introduction	44
3.2 The Stiefel manifold	45
3.3 Maximum marginal likelihood estimation	48
3.4 One argument matrix not of full rank	51
3.5 A BARTLETT-LAWLEY type test of rank	57
3.6 Connections with MANOVA and canonical correlations	64

Chapter 4: The Bessel Function of One Argument	68
4.1 Introduction	68
4.2 ANDERSON'S integral	68
4.3 Finding the maxima	71
4.4 Approximating the integral	73
4.5 Proving the approximation	76
4.6 Summary	76
4.7 The averaged ANDERSON'S integral	77
Chapter 5: The P.D.E. Asymptotic Formula for ${}_0F_1$	78
5.1 Introduction	78
5.2 Using the differential equations	78
5.3 The direct method	85
5.4 The two methods, a comparison	86
5.5 Statistical applications	88
Chapter 6: The Laguerre Polynomial $L_k^a(S)$	90
6.1 Introduction	90
6.2 The classical results	90
6.3 The matrix generalisations	92
6.4 The non-central moments of the likelihood ratio statistic	96
Chapter 7: Calculation of Zonal Polynomials and $\binom{k}{v}$	99
7.1 Introduction	99
7.2 The $Z_k(\cdot)$ in terms of the $M_k(\cdot)$	99
7.3 Zonal series and evaluating the $M_k(S)$	102
7.4 The formula for $\binom{k}{v}$	107

7.5	The $g_{\nu\mu}^{\kappa}$ and products of monomial symmetric functions	109
7.6	Summation identities for $\binom{\kappa}{\nu}$ and $g_{\nu\mu}^{\kappa}$	114
Chapter 8:	Numerical Evaluation	117
8.1	Introduction	117
8.2	Small latent roots - zonal series	117
8.3	Medium value latent roots - Laguerre series	119
8.4	Large latent roots - asymptotic formulae	121
8.5	Concluding remarks	124
Appendix 1		125
A.1.1	Calculation of the $d_{\kappa}$	125
A.1.2	The evaluation of (2.42)	127
A.1.3	Further terms of the series	130
Appendix 2		132
Appendix 3:	Calculation of the Coefficients $c_{\kappa r}$	135
A.3.1	The programme	135
A.3.2	The generation of partitions	135
A.3.3	Storage of partitions	136
A.3.4	The calculation of $c(\kappa)$ and $\chi_{[2\kappa]}(1)$	138
Appendix 4:	Calculation of the $g_{\nu\mu}^{\kappa}$ and $\binom{\kappa}{\nu}$	140
A.4.1	The programme	140
A.4.2	The product of msf's, the $b_{\epsilon}$ and the $e_{\alpha\beta}^{\delta}$	140
A.4.3	Storing the $b_{\epsilon}$	143
Bibliography		145

## SUMMARY

Both the non-central Wishart and non-central means with known covariance distributions can be written as the appropriate central distribution multiplied by a factor which in each case involves a  ${}_0F_1$  hypergeometric (or Bessel) function of matrix argument (JAMES [3]). The results of this thesis constitute an assault on the problem of evaluating the Bessel functions via asymptotic expansions or exact series for arbitrary argument matrices.

In the first part of this thesis matrix transformations and group integrations are used on the integral representations for the Bessel functions to reduce them to a form suitable for the application of a method of approximation due to G.A. ANDERSON [1]. Asymptotic expansions are derived and these are shown to be valid for large values of the latent roots of the argument matrix or matrices. For the non-central means with known covariance distribution the expansion is used to compute maximum marginal likelihood estimates for the non-centrality parameters and to establish a modified Chi-square test on the number of non-zero non-centralities.

For the Bessel function of one argument matrix I use a differential equation to derive an approximation asymptotic in the number of degrees of freedom. The result is applied to the likelihood factor of the non-central Wishart.

In the latter part of this thesis I consider methods for the direct evaluation of the Bessel functions in terms of series of zonal polynomials and Laguerre polynomials (CONSTANTINE [2]).

By using the Laplace transform for matrix variables I prove some generalisations of classical summation formulae involving the Laguerre polynomial. A summation formula for the determination of the coefficients  $\binom{\kappa}{\nu}$  ( $a_{\kappa\tau}$  CONSTANTINE [2]) is proved, as well as other identities involving them. These coefficients are then tabulated for the values  $k=5,6$ . Incidentally an algorithm for calculating the  $g_{\nu\mu}^{\kappa}$ , involved in expressing a product of two zonal polynomials in terms of zonal polynomials, is developed.

JAMES [4] has shown that the zonal polynomials can be expressed in terms of the monomial symmetric functions, where the coefficients are easily determined recursively. I calculate these for the direct evaluation of the Bessel functions in zonal polynomial expansions. By summing the first few terms of the series it is possible to study convergence for various argument matrices.

The final section is devoted to making numerical comparisons of all the methods and giving some idea of their ranges of usefulness.

In appendices I give details of the computer programs used as well as considering problems such as the generation and storage of partitions and the indexing of arrays.

## REFERENCES

- [1] G.A. ANDERSON: An asymptotic expansion for the distribution of the latent roots of the estimated covariance matrix, *Ann. Math. Statist.* 36 (1965), 1153-1173.
- [2] A.G. CONSTANTINE: The distribution of Hotelling's generalised  $T_0^2$ , *Ann. Math. Statistics* 37 (1966), 215-225.
- [3] A.T. JAMES: The distribution of non central means with known covariance, *Ann. Math. Statist.* 32 (1961), 874-882.
- [4] A.T. JAMES: Calculation of zonal polynomial coefficients by use of the Laplace-Beltrami operator, *Ann. Math. Statist.* 39 (1968), 1153-1173.



SIGNED STATEMENT

This thesis contains no material which has been accepted for the award of any other degree or diploma in any University. To the best of my knowledge and belief, the thesis contains no material previously published or written by any other person, except where due reference is made in the text of the thesis.

---

(B.G. Leach)

## ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The author is indebted to his supervisor Professor A.T. James for suggesting the topic for research and for encouragement and assistance given throughout this work. He has also benefited from discussions with Dr. A.G. Constantine of the Commonwealth Scientific and Industrial Research Organisation (Division of Mathematical Statistics), who also suggested the use of the system of partial differential equations (Chapter 5).

The author gratefully acknowledges the financial support of a Commonwealth Postgraduate Award and the use of computing facilities at the University of Adelaide. Many thanks are extended to Miss D.J. Potter for her efficient typing of the manuscript, and to Mr. R. Goodwins for the photographic work. Finally the author expresses a vote of thanks to his wife Carolyn for the duplication of the thesis.



## CHAPTER 1

### INTRODUCTION

#### 1.1 General

The topic is multivariate normal analysis based on the multivariate normal distribution. Let the  $m \times n$  matrix variate  $X$ , with  $m \leq n$ , be distributed as

$$dF(X; M, \Sigma) = (2\pi)^{-\frac{1}{2}mn} \det \Sigma^{-\frac{1}{2}n} \text{etr}\left\{-\frac{1}{2}\Sigma^{-1}(X-M)(X-M)'\right\} \prod_{1,j} dx_{1,j} \quad (1.1)$$

where  $E[X] = M$ ,  $X = (x_1 \dots x_1 \dots x_n)$ ,  $x_1 = (x_{j1})_{m \times 1}$  and  $\text{cov}(x_1, x_j) = \delta_{1j}\Sigma$ . That is, the columns of  $X$  form  $n$  independent samples with  $x_1$  from  $N(m_1, \Sigma)$ , where  $M = (m_1 \dots m_n)$ .

In 1961 JAMES [20] has given the non-central Wishart distribution, which is the distribution of

$$XX', \quad (1.2)$$

and the non-central means with known covariance matrix distribution, that is the distribution of the latent roots  $w_1, w_2 \dots w_m$  of the determinantal equation ( $w_1 \geq w_2 \geq \dots \geq w_m$ )

$$\det(XX' - w\Sigma) = 0. \quad (1.3)$$

The central distribution of  $XX'$  (i.e.  $M=0$ ) was given by WISHART [34] as

$$\frac{1}{2^{\frac{1}{2}mn} \det \Sigma^{\frac{1}{2}n} \Gamma_m(\frac{1}{2}n)} \det(XX')^{\frac{1}{2}(n-m-1)} \text{etr}(-\frac{1}{2}\Sigma^{-1}XX') (d(XX')) \quad (1.4)$$

where

$$\Gamma_m(a) = \pi^{\frac{1}{2}m(m-1)} \prod_{i=1}^m \Gamma(a - \frac{1}{2}(i-1)) \quad (1.5)$$

and  $\Gamma(a)$  is the ordinary Gamma function. For the latent roots  $w_1, w_2, \dots, w_m$  the central joint distribution was given by FISHER [11], HSU [13] and ROY [31] as

$$\frac{\pi^{\frac{1}{2}m^2}}{2^{\frac{1}{2}mn} \Gamma_m(\frac{1}{2}n) \Gamma_m(\frac{1}{2}m)} \exp(-\frac{1}{2} \sum_{i=1}^m w_i) \prod_{i=1}^m w_i^{\frac{1}{2}(n-m-1)} \prod_{1 < j} (w_i - w_j) \prod_{j=1}^m dw_i. \quad (1.6)$$

Now if (1.1) is written as

$$dF(X; M, \Sigma) = \text{etr}(-\frac{1}{2}\Sigma^{-1}MM') \text{etr}(M'\Sigma^{-1}X) dF(X; 0, \Sigma) \quad (1.7)$$

then both non-central distributions can be written as a likelihood factor multiplied by the appropriate central distribution. That is, the non-central distribution of  $XX'$  is

$$c_1 \text{etr}(-\frac{1}{2}\Sigma^{-1}MM') \int_{\mathcal{O}(n)} \text{etr}(M'\Sigma^{-1}XH) (dH) \times (1.4) \quad (1.8)$$

where  $(dH)$  stands for the invariant Haar measure on the group  $\mathcal{O}(n)$  of  $n \times n$  orthogonal matrices  $H$  and

$$\text{Vol}(\mathcal{O}(n)) = \int_{\mathcal{O}(n)} (dH) = \frac{2^n \pi^{\frac{1}{2}n^2}}{\Gamma_n(\frac{1}{2}n)} \quad (1.9)$$

making  $c_1 = [\text{Vol}(\mathcal{O}(n))]^{-1}$  to give the integral of (1.8) the value unity for  $M=0$ . The process of integration over  $\mathcal{O}(n)$  is called averaging (see JAMES [16],[17]). One

further integration gives the non-central distribution of the roots  $w_1 \dots w_m$  as

$$c_2 \operatorname{etr}(-\frac{1}{2}\Sigma^{-1}MM') \int_{\mathcal{O}(m)} (dH_1) \int_{\mathcal{O}(n)} (dH_2) \operatorname{etr}((\Sigma^{-\frac{1}{2}}M)' H_1 (\Sigma^{-\frac{1}{2}}X) H_2) \times (1.6) \quad (1.10)$$

with the normalising constant  $c_2 = [\operatorname{Vol}(\mathcal{O}(n))\operatorname{Vol}(\mathcal{O}(m))]^{-1}$ .

In [20], JAMES also showed how to expand both integrals in series of zonal polynomials. These polynomials  $Z_\kappa(S)$ , where  $S$  is an  $m \times m$  symmetric matrix, are homogeneous symmetric polynomials in the latent roots of  $S$  corresponding to the partitions

$$\kappa = (k_1 \ k_2 \ \dots \ k_m) \quad k_1 \geq k_2 \geq \dots \geq k_m \quad (1.11)$$

of the integer  $k$  into not more than  $m$  parts. A most important property is their average over the orthogonal group  $\mathcal{O}(m)$ , given by

$$\int_{\mathcal{O}(m)} Z_\kappa(RH'SH) (dH) = \frac{Z_\kappa(R)Z_\kappa(S)}{Z_\kappa(I_m)} \quad (1.12)$$

where  $I_m$  is the  $m \times m$  identity matrix and

$$Z_\kappa(I_m) = 2^k \left(\frac{1}{2}m\right)_\kappa \quad (1.13)$$

with

$$(a)_\kappa = \prod_{i=1}^m (a - \frac{1}{2}(i-1))_{k_i} \quad (a)_n = a(a+1)\dots(a+n-1). \quad (1.14)$$

Full definitions, proofs etc. can be found in JAMES [18], [19],[20] and CONSTANTINE [7].

Subsequently in 1963, CONSTANTINE [7] gave a power series representation of the hypergeometric functions of matrix argument. The more general form has two argument matrices and is defined as

$${}_pF_q^{(m)}(a_1 \dots a_p; b_1 \dots b_q; R, S) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \sum_{\kappa} \frac{(a_1)_{\kappa} \dots (a_p)_{\kappa}}{(b_1)_{\kappa} \dots (b_q)_{\kappa}} \frac{C_{\kappa}(R) C_{\kappa}(S)}{k! C_{\kappa}(I)} \quad (1.15)$$

with the summation over all partitions  $\kappa$  of  $k$ , and

$$C_{\kappa}(S) = \frac{\chi_{[2\kappa]}(1)}{1.3 \dots (2k-1)} Z_{\kappa}(S) \quad (1.16)$$

with  $\chi_{[2\kappa]}(1)$  the dimension of the representation  $[2\kappa]$  of the symmetric group on  $2k$  symbols. This change in normalisation (1.16) simplifies the formulae. For one argument we have

$${}_pF_q(a_1 \dots a_p; b_1 \dots b_q; R) = {}_pF_q^{(m)}(a_1 \dots a_p; b_1 \dots b_q; R, I) \quad (1.17)$$

and from (1.12)

$${}_pF_q^{(m)}(a_1 \dots a_p; b_1 \dots b_q; R, S) = \int_{\mathcal{D}(m)} {}_pF_q(a_1 \dots a_p; b_1 \dots b_q; RH'SH) (dH) \quad (1.18)$$

Full definitions, proofs etc. are found in CONSTANTINE [7] and JAMES [21].

Using the hypergeometric notation JAMES [21] gives (1.8) as

$$\text{etr}(-\frac{1}{2}\Sigma^{-1}MM') {}_0F_1(\frac{1}{2}n; \frac{1}{2}\Sigma^{-1}MM' \Sigma^{-1}XX') \times (1.4) \quad (1.19)$$

and if we write  $W = \text{diag}(w_1)$ ,  $\Omega = \text{diag}(\omega_1)$  where the  $\omega_1$  are the roots of

$$\det(MM' - \omega\Sigma) = 0 \quad (1.20)$$

then (1.10) becomes

$$\text{etr}\left(-\frac{1}{2}\Omega\right) {}_0F_1^{(m)}\left(\frac{1}{2}n; \frac{1}{2}\Omega, W\right) \times (1.6). \quad (1.21)$$

The  ${}_0F_1$  is called the Bessel function of matrix argument and is a generalisation of the familiar univariate function defined by

$${}_0F_1(a; x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{x^n}{(a)_n n!}. \quad (1.22)$$

This function appears in the non-central  $\chi^2$ . If variates  $x_1$  are independent  $N(0,1)$  then the distribution of  $\chi^2 = (x_1 + \sqrt{\omega})^2 + x_2^2 + \dots + x_n^2$  is (setting  $w = \chi^2$ )

$$e^{-\frac{1}{2}\omega} {}_0F_1\left(\frac{1}{2}n; \frac{1}{2}\omega w\right) \frac{1}{2^{\frac{1}{2}n} \Gamma(\frac{1}{2}n)} e^{-\frac{1}{2}w} w^{\frac{1}{2}n-1} dw. \quad (1.23)$$

Both (1.19) and (1.21) reduce to (1.23) if  $m=1$  but (1.21), or the distribution of the non-central means with known covariance, is considered to be the generalisation of the non-central  $\chi^2$ .

## 1.2 Historical

The first results on the non-central Wishart distribution were obtained in 1944 by T.W. ANDERSON and GIRSHICK [3]. They stated the general problem in the form of a multiple integral and gave the solution for the rank of  $M \leq 2$ . Both results are expressed in terms of the Bessel functions  $I_\nu(x)$ . Subsequently in 1947 ANDERSON [2], by transforming the general multiple integral, managed to perform

some of the required integrations and produced an integral representation that appeared to be a matrix analogue of the Poisson integral representation of the Bessel function. The distribution for rank 3 was obtained in 1953 by WEIBULL [33] and in 1955, prior to the zonal expansions, JAMES [16],[17] gave a power series expansion for the general distribution.

The first definite mention of the non-central means with known covariance distribution was in 1961 when JAMES [20] gave the general distribution. It has subsequently been studied in JAMES [21], [22] where it was shown to be the limiting distribution for the general non-central means distribution with finite error degrees of freedom and for the canonical correlations distribution both of which were derived by CONSTANTINE [7].

For convenience these two limiting processes will be outlined here. If  $X$  is such that the  $m \times m$  matrix  $XX'$  has the non-central Wishart distribution on  $s$  degrees of freedom with non-centrality parameters  $\Omega$  (defined by (1.20)) and  $Y$  is such that  $YY'$  has the central Wishart distribution on  $t$  degrees of freedom, the covariance matrix in each case being  $\Sigma$ , then the distribution of the latent roots  $r_1 \dots r_m$  of the matrix  $R = XX'(XX' + YY')^{-1}$  is given by



$$\text{etr}(-\frac{1}{2}\Omega)_1 F_1^{(m)}(\frac{1}{2}(s+t); \frac{1}{2}s; \frac{1}{2}\Omega, R)$$

$$\frac{\pi^{\frac{1}{2}m^2} \Gamma_m(\frac{1}{2}(s+t))}{\Gamma_m(\frac{1}{2}s) \Gamma_m(\frac{1}{2}t) \Gamma_m(\frac{1}{2}m)} \prod_{i=1}^m r_i^{\frac{1}{2}(s-m-1)} (1-r_i)^{\frac{1}{2}(t-m-1)} \prod_{i < j} (r_i - r_j) \prod dr_i. \quad (1.24)$$

The  $r_i$  are the solutions of

$$\det(\mathbf{X}\mathbf{X}'(\mathbf{X}\mathbf{X}' + \mathbf{Y}\mathbf{Y}')^{-1} - r\mathbf{I}) = 0 \quad (1.25)$$

which can be rearranged as

$$\det(\mathbf{X}\mathbf{X}' - \frac{r}{1-r} \mathbf{Y}\mathbf{Y}') = 0. \quad (1.26)$$

Now set  $\mathbf{Y}\mathbf{Y}' = t\mathbf{S}$  (so that as  $t \rightarrow \infty$ ,  $\mathbf{S} \rightarrow \Sigma$ ) then if

$$w = \frac{r}{1-r} t \quad (1.27)$$

as  $t \rightarrow \infty$  (1.26) becomes  $\det(\mathbf{X}\mathbf{X}' - w\Sigma) = 0$  and it is quite easy to show that under the substitution (1.27) the limit of the distribution (1.24) as  $t \rightarrow \infty$  is (1.21).

Also if  $r_1^2 \dots r_m^2$  are the sample canonical correlation coefficients and  $\rho_1^2 \dots \rho_m^2$  the population canonical correlation coefficients and there are  $t$  degrees of freedom, then the limiting distribution, as  $t \rightarrow \infty$ , of

$$tr_1^2 = w_1 \quad \text{such that} \quad t\rho_1^2 = \omega_1 \quad (1.28)$$

is again (1.21).

The most recent reference to the non-central means with known covariance distribution was in 1968 when PILLAI and GUPTA [28] showed that the first two moments of  $W_2^{(m)}$ , the second elementary symmetric function in  $\frac{1}{2}w_1 \dots \frac{1}{2}w_m$ ,

could be expressed in terms of generalised Laguerre polynomials. The results are of interest in what follows for the appearance of these polynomials whose evaluation will be considered at length.

### 1.3 Review of problems considered

By direct summation of the zonal series the Bessel functions can be evaluated for argument matrices with small latent roots. For medium sized latent roots the Bessel function is expressed in terms of the generalised Laguerre polynomials (see CONSTANTINE [8]) in an attempt to obtain more rapidly converging series. The results and details are given in Chapters 6 and 7.

Two Chapters are devoted to the problem of expanding the Bessel function in an asymptotic series valid when the latent roots are large. The starting point in each case is the integral representation i.e. (1.10) and (1.8). The method used is an extension of that used in 1965 by G.A. ANDERSON [1] to expand the hypergeometric function  ${}_0F_0^{(m)}(-\frac{1}{2}n\Sigma^{-1}, L)$  in an asymptotic series for large  $n$ . He begins with the integral definition

$${}_0F_0^{(m)}(-\frac{1}{2}n\Sigma^{-1}, L) = \int_{\mathcal{O}(m)} \text{etr}(-\frac{1}{2}n\Sigma^{-1}H' LH) (dH) \quad (1.29)$$

where  $H \in \mathcal{O}(m)$  and  $L = \text{diag}(l_1)$  where the  $l_1$  are the latent roots given by  $\det(XX' - lI_m) = 0$ . In Chapter 2

the more difficult two argument case is considered and the results are easily modified in Chapter 4 to deal with the simpler one argument function.

The approximations are a generalisation of the classical result for a  ${}_0F_1$  with a large variable. The  ${}_0F_1$  has the Poisson integral representation (ERDELYI [9] 7.12(10) and 7.2.2(12))

$${}_0F_1(c; x) = \frac{\Gamma(c)}{\Gamma(\frac{1}{2})\Gamma(c-\frac{1}{2})} \int_{-1}^1 e^{2\sqrt{x}t} (1-t^2)^{c-\frac{3}{2}} dt. \quad (1.30)$$

The three steps in the approximation process are:-

1. Transform  $1-t = u$

$$= \frac{\Gamma(c) 2^{c-\frac{3}{2}} e^{2\sqrt{x}}}{\Gamma(\frac{1}{2})\Gamma(c-\frac{1}{2})} \int_0^2 e^{-2\sqrt{x}u} u^{c-\frac{3}{2}} (1-\frac{u}{2})^{c-\frac{3}{2}} du.$$

2. Expand binomially

$$= \frac{\Gamma(c) 2^{c-\frac{3}{2}} e^{2\sqrt{x}}}{\Gamma(\frac{1}{2})\Gamma(c-\frac{1}{2})} \sum_{r=0}^{\infty} \binom{c-\frac{3}{2}}{r} \frac{(-1)^r}{2^r} \int_0^2 e^{-2\sqrt{x}u} u^{c-\frac{3}{2}+r} du.$$

3. For large  $x$  the major contribution to the integral is made near the origin and adding in the tail  $2 < u < \infty$  does not alter the value much, thus

$$\int_0^2 f(u) du \simeq \int_0^{\infty} f(u) du$$

and

$${}_0F_1(c; x) \simeq \frac{\Gamma(c) e^{2\sqrt{x}}}{2\sqrt{\pi} x^{\frac{c-1}{2}}} \sum_{r=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^r \Gamma(c-\frac{1}{2}+r)}{r! \Gamma(c-\frac{1}{2}-r)} \left(\frac{1}{4\sqrt{x}}\right)^r. \quad (1.31)$$

Both asymptotic results will be shown to agree with this for  $m=1$ .

Finally in Chapter 5 a differential equation approach is used to give an asymptotic approximation of  ${}_0F_1(\frac{1}{2}n; R)$  valid for large  $n$ . This is a generalisation of the one variable method (see e.g. ERDELYI [10]).

Some statistical applications of the non-central means with known covariance distribution are given in Chapter 3. In particular problems of parameter estimation and hypothesis testing by maximum likelihood are considered. The main use of the approximations to the non-central Wishart is to permit the likelihood function to be calculated over a large part of the range. There are difficulties in evaluating the  ${}_0F_1$  when both  $n$  and the latent roots are both large, but the term  $\text{etr}(-\frac{1}{2}\Omega)$  should prevent the likelihood being large in this region.

#### 1.4 Notation

Two further group integrations will be considered:-

$$1. \quad \int_{\mathcal{V}_{nm}} (dH_1) \quad \text{Vol}(\mathcal{V}_{nm}) = \frac{2^m \pi^{\frac{1}{2}mn}}{\Gamma_m(\frac{1}{2}n)} \quad (1.32)$$

where  $H_1 \in \mathcal{V}_{nm}$ , the Stiefel manifold, and  $H_1$  consists of the first  $m$  columns of the matrix  $H \in \mathcal{O}(n)$  i.e.

$$H = \begin{bmatrix} H_1 & H_2 \end{bmatrix}_n \quad H_1' H_1 = I_m \quad (1.33)$$

and  $(dH_1)$  stands for the invariant Haar measure on the

group  $V_{nm}$ .

2. For  $S$   $m \times m$  symmetric we will consider integrals of the form

$$\int_{S>0} (dS) \quad \int_{0<S<T} (dS) \quad (1.34)$$

where the inequality  $S>0$  is understood to mean  $S$  is positive definite,  $S<T$  means  $T-S>0$ , the integrations are over the space of positive definite matrices and

$(dS) = \bigwedge_{1 \leq j}^m ds_{1j}$ .  $\wedge \equiv$  exterior product. Full definitions and proofs are given in JAMES [15].

The following definitions are from ERDELYI [10].

DEFINITION 1. The sequence of functions  $\{\varphi_n(x)\}$  is an asymptotic sequence as  $x \rightarrow \infty$ , if for each  $n$

$$\varphi_{n+1}(x) = o(\varphi_n(x)) \quad \text{as } x \rightarrow \infty.$$

Let  $\{\varphi_n(x)\}$  be an asymptotic sequence.

DEFINITION 2. The (formal) series  $\sum a_n \varphi_n(x)$  is an asymptotic expansion to  $N$  terms of  $f(x)$  as  $x \rightarrow \infty$  if

$$f(x) = \sum_{n=0}^N a_n \varphi_n(x) + o(\varphi_N(x)) \quad \text{as } x \rightarrow \infty.$$

This is written  $f(x) \sim \sum_{n=0}^N a_n \varphi_n(x)$ .

DEFINITION 3. The function  $\varphi(x)$  is an asymptotic representation for  $f(x)$  as  $x \rightarrow \infty$  if

$$f(x) = \varphi(x) + o(\varphi(x)) \quad \text{as } x \rightarrow \infty.$$

This is written  $f(x) \sim \varphi(x)$ .

Let  $u_1, u_2, \dots, u_m$  be indeterminates. The elementary

symmetric functions  $a_1$  are defined by

$$\begin{aligned} a_1 &= \sum u_1 \\ a_2 &= \sum_{1 < j} u_1 u_j \\ &\cdot \quad \cdot \quad \cdot \quad \cdot \\ a_m &= u_1 u_2 \dots u_m. \end{aligned}$$

The power sums  $r_1$  corresponding to the one part partitions (i) have the definition

$$r_1 = \sum_{n=1}^m u_n.$$

In Chapters 2, 3 and 4 we will be dealing with "matrices  $A$  with large latent roots" and for convenience this is shortened to "large matrices  $A$ ". Also note the following convention for the use of the "little-o" notation. Let

$$h_{1j} = 1 - \frac{1}{2} \sum_{j=1}^m s_{1j}^2 + o(s^2)$$

where  $o(s^2)$  means that all subsequent terms are at least third degree in the  $s_{1j}$ . Similarly if also

$$k_{1j} = 1 - \frac{1}{2} \sum_j t_{1j}^2 + o(t^2)$$

then

$$h_{1j} k_{1j} = 1 - \frac{1}{2} \sum_j (s_{1j}^2 + t_{1j}^2) + o(s^2)$$

where here  $o(s^2)$  means that all subsequent terms are at least third degree in the  $s_{1j}, t_{1j}$ .

It is also convenient to have a second notation for partitions. Let  $\kappa = (k_1 k_2 \dots k_m) = (1^{\pi_1} 2^{\pi_2} \dots i^{\pi_i} \dots)$  where

$\pi_1$  of the  $k_j$  are 1,  $\pi_2$  are 2... $\pi_i$  are  $i$  and if  $k_1 = s$  then  $\pi_r = 0$  for  $r > s$ . An ordering of partitions of a given integer can also be introduced. Let  $\kappa = (k_1 k_2 \dots k_m)$  and  $\lambda = (l_1 l_2 \dots l_m)$  be two partitions of  $k$ , then  $\kappa > \lambda$  if  $k_1 = l_1 \dots k_i = l_i, k_{i+1} > l_{i+1}$ . This will prove useful for specifying the range of summation for summing over subsets of partitions. This ordering also leads to the definition of weights. Let  $u_1 \dots u_m$  be indeterminates and  $u_1^{k_1} \dots u_m^{k_m}, u_1^{l_1} \dots u_m^{l_m}$  be two monomials with indices  $\kappa$  and  $\lambda$  respectively. Then if  $\kappa > \lambda$  the former monomial is said to be of higher weight.

The summation conventions to be observed for partitions are

1.  $\sum_{\kappa} \equiv$  sum over all partitions  $\kappa$  of a particular  $k$  and
2.  $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \sum_{\kappa}$  shortens to  $\sum_{k, \kappa}$  where possible.

Finally the LEMMA'S 2.1 and 2.2 of Chapter 2 are both well known but no sources are acknowledged.

CHAPTER 2THE ASYMPTOTIC FORMULA FOR  ${}_0F_1^{(m)}\left(\frac{1}{2}n; \frac{1}{2}\Omega, W\right)$ 2.1 Introduction

In this chapter an asymptotic expansion for the Bessel function  ${}_0F_1^{(m)}\left(\frac{1}{2}n; \frac{1}{2}\Omega, W\right)$  is given. The expansion is shown to be valid for matrices  $\Omega$  and  $W$  with large latent roots. A method of approximation developed by G.A. ANDERSON [1] is used.

The starting point is the integral representation (1.10) and in order to make ANDERSON'S methods work, some variables must be integrated out. In the first stages of these integrations a Poisson type integral representation (2.15) for the Bessel function is found. This is a two matrix argument extension of the integral called ANDERSON'S integral by JAMES [21] equation (151).

Some of the further integrations and transformations are shown to be generalisations of those given in section 1.3 in relation to the classical Bessel function. The validity of the asymptotic formula itself is shown to follow from a LEMMA due to HSU [14].

The statistical implications of the result, summarised in THEOREM 2.4 of section 9, are left to the next Chapter. An alternative derivation of the main term of the asymptotic series will also be given in Chapter 3.



## 2.2 As a function of the latent roots

From (1.21) and (1.10) the integral representation is

$${}_0F_1^{(m)}\left(\frac{1}{2}n; \frac{1}{2}\Omega, W\right) = k_1 \int_{\mathcal{O}(m)} (dH_1) \int_{\mathcal{O}(n)} (dH_2) \operatorname{etr}[(\Sigma^{-\frac{1}{2}}M)' H_1 \Sigma^{-\frac{1}{2}} X H_2] \quad (2.1)$$

where  $k_1 = [\operatorname{Vol}(\mathcal{O}(m))\operatorname{Vol}(\mathcal{O}(n))]^{-1}$ .

Make the substitutions

$$R = \Sigma^{-\frac{1}{2}}M, \det(MM' - \omega\Sigma) = \det(RR' - \omega I) = 0$$

$$S = \Sigma^{-\frac{1}{2}}X, \det(XX' - w\Sigma) = \det(SS' - wI) = 0$$

and (2.1) becomes

$${}_0F_1^{(m)}\left(\frac{1}{2}n; \frac{1}{2}\Omega, W\right) = k_1 \int_{\mathcal{O}(m)} (dH_1) \int_{\mathcal{O}(n)} (dH_2) \operatorname{etr}(R' H_1 S H_2). \quad (2.2)$$

It is well known that (2.2) is a function of the latent roots  $\omega_1$  and  $w_1$ . This will be demonstrated by applying transformations to  $R$  and  $S$  that reduce them to a "diagonal" form for rectangular matrices. The elements on the diagonals are simple functions of  $\omega_1$  and  $w_1$ .

We use the well known

### LEMMA 2.1

Let  $Z$  be a real  $m \times n$  matrix. Let  $A = \operatorname{diag}(a_1)$  where  $a_1 = +\sqrt{b_1}$  and the  $b_1$  are the latent roots of  $\det(ZZ' - bI) = 0$ . Also  $D = (\delta_1 \delta_2 \dots \delta_m)$  is the matrix of latent vectors  $\delta_1$  for  $ZZ'$ , normalised so that the first element of each column is positive, making  $D$  unique. If  $E^1 = A^{-1}D'Z$  i.e.  $E^1 E^{1'} = I_m$  then

$$Z = DAE^1. \quad (2.3)$$

The  $m \times n$  matrix  $E^1$  forms the first  $m$  rows of an orthogonal matrix and we can choose the remaining  $n-m$  rows to form the  $n \times n$  matrix  $E$ , where

$$E = \begin{bmatrix} E^1 \\ E^2 \end{bmatrix} \in \mathcal{O}(n). \quad (2.4)$$

Write (2.3) as

$$Z = DAE^1 = D[A \ 0] \begin{bmatrix} E^1 \\ E^2 \end{bmatrix} = D[A \ 0]E \quad (2.5)$$

where  $[A \ 0]$  is  $m \times n$ .

Applying (2.5) to  $R$  and  $S$

$$R = D_1[A \ 0]E_1 \quad D_1, D_2 \in \mathcal{O}(m)$$

where

$$S = D_2[B \ 0]E_2 \quad E_1, E_2 \in \mathcal{O}(n)$$

and  $A = \text{diag}(a_1)$  from  $\det(RR' - a^2I) = 0$

$B = \text{diag}(b_1)$  from  $\det(SS' - b^2I) = 0$

where the elements of  $A$  and  $B$  satisfy the ordering

$$a_1 > a_2 > \dots > a_m > 0$$

$$b_1 > b_2 > \dots > b_m > 0.$$

By comparison with  $\Omega$  and  $W$ ,  $\omega_1 = a_1^2$  and  $w_1 = b_1^2$ .

Substitute in the exponential term of (2.2)

$$\text{etr}(R'H_1SH_2) = \text{etr}\left(\begin{bmatrix} A \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} D_1' H_2 D_2 [B \ 0] E_2 H_2 E_1'\right)$$

and change variables

$$\begin{aligned} H_1 &\rightarrow \underline{H}_1 = D_1' H_1 D_2 \\ H_2 &\rightarrow \underline{H}_2 = E_2 H_2 E_1'. \end{aligned}$$

Since  $D_1, D_2, E_1, E_2$  are constant matrices  $(dH_1) = (d\underline{H}_1)$ ,  $(dH_2) = (d\underline{H}_2)$  and on dropping the  $\underline{\quad}$  (2.2) becomes

$${}_0F_1^{(m)}\left(\frac{1}{2}n; \frac{1}{2}\Omega, W\right) = k_1 \int_{\mathcal{O}(m)} (dH_1) \int_{\mathcal{O}(n)} (dH_2) \text{etr}\left(\begin{bmatrix} AH_1B & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} H_2\right). \quad (2.6)$$

At this stage the Bessel function is clearly seen to depend only on simple functions  $\sqrt{\omega_1}$  and  $\sqrt{w_1}$  of the latent roots.

### 2.3 ANDERSON'S method

G.A. ANDERSON'S [1] approach to approximating integrals of this type is to apply the parameterisation  $H = \exp(S)$  where  $H \in \mathcal{O}(m)$  and  $S = (s_{ij})$  is an  $m \times m$  skew symmetric matrix. The  $s_{ij}$  are then integrated over the range  $(-\infty, \infty)$ .

Let us apply this directly to (2.6). Set  $H_1 = (h_{ij})$ ,  $H_2 = (k_{ij})$ ,  $S = (s_{ij})$ ,  $T = (t_{ij})$ ,  $A = (a_i \delta_{ij})$  and  $B = (b_i \delta_{ij})$ . Then

$$H_1 = \exp(S) = I + S + \frac{1}{2}S^2 + \dots$$

$$H_2 = \exp(T) = I + T + \frac{1}{2}T^2 + \dots$$

and the Jacobian is of the form  $1 + o(s)$ . Element by element

$$\begin{aligned} h_{11} &= 1 - \frac{1}{2} \sum_{j=1}^m s_{1j}^2 + \dots & i &= 1, \dots, m \\ h_{1j} &= s_{1j} + \dots & i &\neq j \\ k_{11} &= 1 - \frac{1}{2} \sum_{j=1}^n t_{1j}^2 + \dots & i &= 1, \dots, n \\ k_{1j} &= t_{1j} + \dots & i &\neq j. \end{aligned}$$

Now

$$\begin{aligned} \text{tr} \left( \begin{bmatrix} AH_1 B & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} H_2 \right) &= \sum_{i,j,u,v} a_i \delta_{iu} h_{uj} b_j \delta_{jv} k_{vi} \\ &= \sum_{i,j}^m a_i b_j h_{ij} k_{ji} \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^m a_i b_i h_{11} k_{11} + \sum_{i \neq j} a_i b_j h_{ij} k_{ji} \quad (2.7) \end{aligned}$$

and on substituting, noting that  $s_{ij} = s_{ji}$ ,  $s_{11} = 0$  etc.

$$= \sum_{i=1}^m a_i b_i \left( 1 - \frac{1}{2} \sum_{j=1}^m s_{ij}^2 \right) \left( 1 - \frac{1}{2} \sum_{j=1}^n t_{ij}^2 \right) - \sum_{i,j} a_i b_j s_{ij} t_{ij} + \dots \quad (2.8)$$

Now (2.8) does not contain the elements  $t_{ij}$ ,  $i, j = m+1, \dots, n$  so on substitution in (2.6) and extension of the range we have integrals of the form

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} dt_{ij} \quad i, j = m+1, \dots, n$$

which clearly leads to an absurd result. This is because the variables  $k_{ij}$ ,  $i, j = m+1, \dots, n$  are not explicitly involved in the integrand.

We must now try to integrate out those variables only implicitly involved in (2.6) before applying the parameterisation. The elements only involved in the range are

$$k_{ij}, k_{ji} \quad i = 1, \dots, m \quad j = m+1, \dots, n$$

$$k_{ij} \quad i, j = m+1, \dots, n.$$

Partitioning  $H_2$  as

$$H_2 = \begin{bmatrix} H_2^1 \\ H_2^2 \end{bmatrix} \begin{matrix} m \\ n-m \\ n \end{matrix}$$

the integrand of (2.6) reduces to  $\text{etr}\left(\begin{bmatrix} AH_1BH_2^1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}\right)$ . Only elements of  $H_2^1$  appear in the integrand so we integrate over  $H_2^2$  for fixed  $H_2^1$  by the formula

$$\int_{H_2^2} (dH) = k_2 (dH_2^1) \quad (2.9)$$

where  $(dH_2^1)$  stands for the invariant volume element on the Stiefel manifold  $\mathcal{V}_{nm}$  and

$$k_2 = \frac{\text{Vol}(\mathcal{O}(n))}{\text{Vol}(\mathcal{V}_{nm})}.$$

(See JAMES [15] equations (4.39), (5.10) and (5.16).)

The integral (2.6) becomes

$${}_0F_1^{(m)}\left(\frac{1}{2}n; \frac{1}{2}\Omega, W\right) = k_3 \int_{\mathcal{O}(m)} (dH_1) \int_{\mathcal{V}_{nm}} (dH_2^1) \text{etr}\left(\begin{bmatrix} AH_1BH_2^1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}\right) \quad (2.10)$$

where  $k_3 = [\text{Vol}(\mathcal{O}(m))\text{Vol}(\mathcal{V}_{nm})]^{-1}$ . Thus we have

integrated out  $k_{ij}$   $i = m+1, \dots, n$ ,  $j = 1, \dots, n$ .

There are two paths of development to be followed here. Either the Stiefel manifold  $\mathcal{V}_{nm}$  can be parameterised or the remaining implicit  $k_{ij}$  integrated out. In Chapter 3 the parameterisation of  $\mathcal{V}_{nm}$  is used. The integrating out of the  $k_{ij}$   $i = 1, \dots, n$ ,  $j = m+1 \dots n$  is considered in the next section.

#### 2.4 Reduction to a Poisson type integral

Partition  $H_2^1$  into

$$H_2^1 = \begin{bmatrix} H_2^{1,1} & H_2^{1,2} \\ m & n-m \end{bmatrix} m.$$

Thus

$$\begin{aligned} \text{etr} \left( \begin{bmatrix} AH_1 BH_2^1 & \\ 0 & \end{bmatrix} \right) &= \text{etr} \left( \begin{bmatrix} AH_1 BH_2^{1,1} & AH_1 BH_2^{1,2} \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \right) \\ &= \text{etr}(AH_1 BH_2^{1,1}) \end{aligned}$$

and the integrand now only involves the elements of  $H_2^{1,1}$ .

One more integration can be performed and this is facilitated by using the transformation (HERZ [12], LEMMA 3.7)

$$H_2^1 = [H_2^{1,1} \ H_2^{1,2}] = [T \ (I_m - TT')^{\frac{1}{2}} U']$$

where  $H_2^{1,1} = T$  real with  $TT' \leq I_m$ ,  $(I_m - TT')^{\frac{1}{2}}$  is the non-negative square root and  $U \in \mathcal{V}_{n-m, m}$ . The LEMMA imposes the restriction that  $n \geq 2m$  (against the initial assumpt-

ion of  $n \geq m$ ). This should create no difficulties in a statistical application.

HERZ gives for the measures

$$(dH_2^1) = \det(I - TT')^{\frac{1}{2}(n-2m-1)} (dT) (dU)$$

and the integral (2.10) becomes

$$k_3 \int_{\mathcal{O}(m)} (dH_1) \int_{TT' \leq I} (dT) \operatorname{etr}(AH_1BT) \det(I - TT')^{\frac{1}{2}(n-2m-1)} \int_{\mathcal{V}_{n-m,m}} (dU).$$

Integrating  $U$  over  $\mathcal{V}_{n-m,m}$  gives  $\operatorname{Vol}(\mathcal{V}_{n-m,m})$  and

$${}_0F_1^{(m)}\left(\frac{1}{2}n; \frac{1}{2}\Omega, W\right) = k_4 \int_{\mathcal{O}(m)} (dH_1) \int_{TT' \leq I} (dT) \operatorname{etr}(AH_1BT) \det(I - TT')^{\frac{1}{2}(n-2m-1)} \quad (2.11)$$

where

$$k_4 = \frac{\operatorname{Vol}(\mathcal{V}_{n-m,m})}{\operatorname{Vol}(\mathcal{O}(m)) \operatorname{Vol}(\mathcal{V}_{nm})} = \frac{\Gamma_m\left(\frac{1}{2}m\right) \Gamma_m\left(\frac{1}{2}n\right)}{2^m \pi^{m^2} \Gamma_m\left(\frac{1}{2}(n-m)\right)}.$$

This integral is the result of averaging ANDERSON'S integral (as quoted by JAMES [21] equation (151)). The derivation of this integral and the averaging process are given in Chapter 4.

The idea now is to replace the integration over  $TT' \leq I$  by one or more integrations, one of which is an integration over  $\mathcal{O}(m)$ .

For  $T$  real  $m \times m$  we can find an  $H_2 \in \mathcal{O}(m)$  such that  $T = SH_2$ , where  $S = (TT')^{\frac{1}{2}}$ . That is,  $S$  is the symmetric positive semi-definite square root.

To find the Jacobian of the transformation, by (2.3)

$$T = \underline{H}_1' D \underline{H}_2 \quad S = \underline{H}_1' D \underline{H}_1$$

where  $\underline{H}_1, \underline{H}_2 \in \mathcal{O}(m)$  and  $D = \text{diag}(d_1)$  with the  $d_1$  the latent roots of  $\det(S - dI) = 0$ . Clearly

$$\begin{aligned} T &= \underline{H}_1' D \underline{H}_1 \quad \underline{H}_1' \underline{H}_2 \\ &= S \quad H_2 \end{aligned}$$

where  $H_2 = \underline{H}_1' \underline{H}_2 \in \mathcal{O}(m)$ . Now in [15] if  $T$  is a real  $m \times n$  matrix, then equation (8.8) gives

$$(dT) = (d\underline{H}_1)(d\underline{H}_2) \prod_{1 < j} (d_1^2 - d_j^2) \prod_{1=1}^m dd_1 \quad (2.12)$$

and from (8.19), with  $S = (X'X)$  an  $m \times m$  symmetric matrix,

$$(dS) = (d\underline{H}_1) \prod_{1 < j} (d_1 - d_j) \prod dd_1. \quad (2.13)$$

Combining (2.12) and (2.13)

$$(dT) = (d\underline{H}_2) \prod_{1 < j} (d_1 + d_j) (dS). \quad (2.14)$$

But  $H_2 = \underline{H}_1' \underline{H}_2$  and for fixed  $\underline{H}_1$ , as  $\underline{H}_2$  ranges over  $\mathcal{O}(m)$  so does  $H_2$ . This corresponds to having fixed  $S$  and as  $H_2$  (or  $\underline{H}_2$ ) ranges over  $\mathcal{O}(m)$ ,  $T$  ranges over all matrices for which  $TT' = S^2$ . Thus when  $\underline{H}_1$  is fixed,  $(dH_2) = (d\underline{H}_2)$ . Substituting in (2.14)

$$(dT) = (d\underline{H}_2) \prod_{1 < j} (d_1 + d_j) (dS).$$

After the transformation the range of integration is changed from  $0 \leq TT' \leq I$  to  $0 \leq S^2 \leq I$  and since  $S$  is



assumed symmetric positive semi-definite, this range is equivalently  $0 \leq S \leq I$ . The integral (2.11) becomes

$${}_0F_1^{(m)}\left(\frac{1}{2}n; \frac{1}{2}\Omega, W\right) = k_L \int_{\mathcal{O}(m)} (dH_1) \int_{\mathcal{O}(m)} (dH_2) \\ \int_{0 \leq S \leq I} (dS) \text{etr}(AH_1 BSH_2) \det(I-S^2)^{\frac{1}{2}(n-2m-1)} \prod_{1 \leq j} (d_1 + d_j). \quad (2.15)$$

If we set  $m=1$  in (2.15) it reduces to (1.30) provided  $\mathcal{O}(1)$  is considered to consist of the two points  $\pm 1$  and the measure  $(dH)$  is taken to be 1 at each point (i.e.  $\text{Vol}(\mathcal{O}(1)) = 2$ ). Thus this integral can be considered as the two matrix argument analogue of the Poisson integral for the classical Bessel function. We can apply the matrix analogues of steps 1.-3. of section 1.3 to the integral (2.15).

## 2.5 The classical approximation generalised

Let us first make the substitution as in step 1.

$$U = I - S \quad (\text{cf. } u=1-t).$$

Clearly  $U$  is symmetric positive semi-definite and has latent roots  $u_1 = 1 - d_1$ , while the range of integration becomes  $0 \leq u \leq I$ . Also it can be shown that

$$(dU) = (-1)^{\frac{1}{2}m(m+1)} (dS)$$

but since the integrand of (2.15) is always non-negative the sign of the Jacobian can be ignored. Thus the integral

becomes

$${}_0F_1^{(m)}\left(\frac{1}{2}n; \frac{1}{2}\Omega, W\right) = k_5 \int_{\mathcal{O}(m)} (dH_1) \int_{\mathcal{O}(m)} (dH_2) \operatorname{etr}(AH_1BH_2) \quad (2.16a)$$

$$\times \int_{0 \leq U \leq I} (dU) \operatorname{etr}(-AH_1BUH_2) [\det U(I - \frac{1}{2}U)]^{\frac{1}{2}(n-2m-1)} \prod_{1 \leq j} \left(1 - \frac{u_1 + u_j}{2}\right) \quad (2.16b)$$

where  $k_5 = 2^{\frac{1}{2}m(n-m-2)} k_4$ .

Now following step 2. let us expand

$$\det(I - \frac{1}{2}U)^{\frac{1}{2}(n-2m-1)}$$

in its binomial expansion (CONSTANTINE [7] equation (31)).

Also as  $\prod_{1 \leq j} \left(1 - \frac{u_1 + u_j}{2}\right)$  is a symmetric function it too has an expansion in zonal polynomials. The two series are then multiplied and the result is expressed in zonal polynomials as

$$\det(I - \frac{1}{2}U)^{\frac{1}{2}(n-2m-1)} \prod_{1 \leq j} \left(1 - \frac{u_1 + u_j}{2}\right) = 1 + \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \sum_{\kappa} c_{\kappa} C_{\kappa}(U). \quad (2.17)$$

Thus the integral (2.16b) can be written as

$$\int_{0 \leq U \leq I} (dU) \operatorname{etr}(-RU) \det U^{\frac{1}{2}(n-2m-1)} \left(1 + \sum_{\kappa, \kappa} c_{\kappa} C_{\kappa}(U)\right) \quad (2.18)$$

where  $R = H_2AH_1B$ .

Finally the analogue of step 3. We want an asymptotic expansion valid for large  $A$  and  $B$ , so  $R$  will be large and  $\operatorname{etr}(-RU)$  will be negligible for large values of  $U$ . Thus we change the range to  $U > 0$  ( $f(U) = 0$  at  $U = 0$ )

and integrate using a THEOREM of [7].

THEOREM 2.1

Let  $R$  be an  $m \times m$  positive definite symmetric matrix. Then

$$\int_{S > 0} \text{etr}(-RS) \det S^{t - \frac{1}{2}(m+1)} C_{\kappa}(S) (dS) = \Gamma_m(t, \kappa) \det R^{-t} C_{\kappa}(R^{-1}). \quad (2.19)$$

The integration is over all positive definite  $m \times m$  matrices  $S$  and valid for all real  $t$  with  $t > \frac{1}{2}(m-1)$ . Also  $\Gamma_m(t, \kappa) = (t)_{\kappa} \Gamma_m(t)$ .

Applying (2.19) term by term to (2.18) with the range of integration extended gives the general term

$$\begin{aligned} & \int_{U > 0} \text{etr}(-RU) \det U^{\frac{1}{2}(n-m) - \frac{1}{2}(m+1)} c_{\kappa} C_{\kappa}(U) (dU) \\ & = \Gamma_m\left(\frac{1}{2}(n-m)\right) \det R^{-\frac{1}{2}(n-m)} \left(\frac{1}{2}(n-m)\right)_{\kappa} c_{\kappa} C_{\kappa}(R^{-1}) \end{aligned}$$

while  $\det R = \det(AB)$ ,  $R^{-1} = B^{-1}H_1' A^{-1}H_2'$ . Finally we are left with the evaluation of

$$k_{\kappa} \det(AB)^{-\frac{1}{2}(n-m)} \int_{\mathcal{V}(m)} (dH_1) \int_{\mathcal{V}(m)} (dH_2) \text{etr}(AH_1BH_2) \left(1 + \sum_{\kappa, \kappa} d_{\kappa} C_{\kappa}(B^{-1}H_1' A^{-1}H_2')\right) \quad (2.20)$$

where  $k_{\kappa} = \Gamma_m\left(\frac{1}{2}(n-m)\right) k_{\kappa}$ ,  $d_{\kappa} = \left(\frac{1}{2}(n-m)\right)_{\kappa} c_{\kappa}$ .

This approximate integral representation for  ${}_0F_1^{(m)}\left(\frac{1}{2}n; \frac{1}{2}\Omega, W\right)$  is now ready to be tackled by parameterisation of  $H_1$  and  $H_2$ .

## 2.6 Finding the maxima

There are two features of ANDERSON'S method:

1. the parameterisation  $H = \exp(S)$  is only valid for proper orthogonal matrices  $H$  (i.e. those with  $\det H = +1$ ), and
2. the approximation is made in neighbourhoods of the equal maxima of the integrand of (2.20), which is denoted by  $f(H_1, H_2; A, B)$  for convenience.

That is we must first convert the integrations of (2.20) into ones over proper orthogonal matrices and then determine the maxima of the integrands.

Firstly  $\mathcal{O}(m)$  is the union of two disjoint subsets  $\mathcal{O}^+(m)$  and  $\mathcal{O}^-(m)$  defined by

$$\mathcal{O}^+(m) = \{H : H \in \mathcal{O}(m), \det H = +1\}$$

$$\mathcal{O}^-(m) = \{H : H \in \mathcal{O}(m), \det H = -1\}.$$

The range of integration of (2.20) breaks into four disjoint ranges, giving

$$\int_{\mathcal{O}(m)} \int_{\mathcal{O}(m)} = \int_{\mathcal{O}^+(m)} \int_{\mathcal{O}^+(m)} + \int_{\mathcal{O}^+(m)} \int_{\mathcal{O}^-(m)} + \int_{\mathcal{O}^-(m)} \int_{\mathcal{O}^+(m)} + \int_{\mathcal{O}^-(m)} \int_{\mathcal{O}^-(m)} \quad (2.21a)$$

or

$$I = I_1 + I_2 + I_3 + I_4. \quad (2.21b)$$

Now it is well known that the elements of  $\mathcal{O}^+(m)$  can be mapped one-to-one into those of  $\mathcal{O}^-(m)$ , and vice versa, by the device of selecting a matrix,  $A$  say, from one subset,  $\mathcal{O}^-(m)$  say, and then as  $H$  runs over all elements of  $\mathcal{O}^+(m)$ ,  $AH$  runs over all elements of  $\mathcal{O}^-(m)$ . In particular, let us consider the mapping

$$H^+ \rightarrow H = JH^+ \quad \text{where} \quad J = \begin{bmatrix} I_{m-1} & 0 \\ 0' & -1 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Then  $H^+ \in \mathcal{O}^+(m)$  implies that  $H \in \mathcal{O}^-(m)$  and since  $J$  is fixed  $(dH) = (dH^+)$ . Applying the transformation to an integral gives

$$\int_{\mathcal{O}^-(m)} y(H) (dH) = \int_{\mathcal{O}^+(m)} y(JH^+) (dH^+).$$

Now returning to (2.21), in  $I_4$  make the transformations

$$\begin{aligned} H_1 &= JH_1^+ & (dH_1) &= (dH_1^+) \\ H_2 &= H_2^+ J & (dH_2) &= (dH_2^+) \end{aligned}$$

and by noting that  $JAJ = A$ ,  $JA^{-1}J = A^{-1}$  it is seen that  $I_4 = I_1$ . Making the same transformations where required in  $I_2$  and  $I_3$  respectively, we obtain (on dropping the  $+$ )

$$I_2 = I_3 = \int_{\mathcal{O}^+(m)} (dH_1) \int_{\mathcal{O}^+(m)} (dH_2) \operatorname{etr}(A^* H_1 B H_2) \left( 1 + \sum_{\kappa, \kappa} d_{\kappa} C_{\kappa} (B^{-1} H_1' A^{*-1} H_2') \right)$$

where  $A^* = AJ = JA = \operatorname{diag}(a_1 \dots a_{m-1}, -a_m)$ . Thus (2.21b) is

$$I = 2I_1 + 2I_2 \quad (2.22)$$

where all integrations are over  $\mathcal{O}^+(m)$  and we can parameterise  $H_1, H_2 \in \mathcal{O}^+(m)$ .

Secondly we must find the  $H_1, H_2$  that are solutions to

$$\max_{H_1, H_2 \in \mathcal{O}^+(m)} f(H_1, H_2; A, B) \quad (2.23)$$

$$\max_{H_1, H_2 \in \mathcal{O}^+(m)} f(H_1, H_2; A^*, B). \quad (2.24)$$

Of course it is easier to find all stationary values of  $f(H_1, H_2; A, B)$  for  $H_1, H_2 \in \mathcal{O}(m)$  and identify the two cases afterwards. In fact we restrict ourselves to finding the stationary points of  $\text{etr}(AH_1BH_2)$  as this is the dominant factor for large  $A, B$ .

Now  $\exp(\cdot)$  is a monotone function so we begin by finding all stationary points of  $\text{tr}(XHYK')$  over  $H, K \in \mathcal{O}(m)$ , where  $X, Y$  are defined by

$$\begin{aligned} X &= \text{diag}(x_1) & x_1 &> x_2 > \dots > x_m > 0 \\ Y &= \text{diag}(y_1) & y_1 &> y_2 > \dots > y_m > 0. \end{aligned}$$

All stationary values of  $\text{tr}(XHYK')$  are given by

#### THEOREM 2.2

If  $X, Y, H, K$  are as defined above then the stationary values of the function  $\text{tr}(XHYK')$  occur at those points where  $H, K$  are signed permutation matrices and related by

$$K = I^*H$$

$$I^* = \begin{bmatrix} \pm 1 & & & 0 \\ & \cdot & & \\ & & \cdot & \\ 0 & & & \pm 1 \end{bmatrix}.$$

DEFINITION. Let  $\sigma$  be a permutation of  $1, 2, \dots, m$ . Then by a signed permutation matrix is meant a matrix  $P = (p_{ij})$  with

$$p_{ij} = \begin{cases} \pm 1 & i = \sigma(j) \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

For example  $\sigma = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 2 & 3 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$

$$\begin{array}{lll} \sigma(1) = 2 & \sigma(2) = 3 & \sigma(3) = 1 \\ p_{21} = 1 & p_{32} = -1 & p_{13} = 1 \end{array}$$

$$P = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Clearly  $P$  is orthogonal.

The proof of the THEOREM uses the well known

LEMMA 2.2

If  $A$  is  $m \times m$  real and  $S_\alpha$ ,  $\alpha = 1, 2, \dots, \frac{1}{2}m(m-1)$  are  $m \times m$  skew symmetric and linearly independent, then

$$\text{tr}(AS_\alpha) = 0 \quad \alpha = 1, 2, \dots, \frac{1}{2}m(m-1)$$

implies that  $A$  is symmetric.

Proof

Let  $A = (a_{ij})$ ,  $S = (s_{ij})$ , then

$$\text{tr}(AS) = \sum_{i,j} a_{ij} s_{ji} = 0.$$

Rearranging

$$\sum_i a_{1i} s_{1i} + \sum_{i < j} (a_{1j} - a_{j1}) s_{j1} = 0. \quad (2.25)$$

Now  $s_{1i} = 0$   $i = 1, \dots, m$  so the  $a_{1i}$  are arbitrary. Substituting the elements of  $S_1, S_2, \dots$  in (2.25) gives  $\frac{1}{2}m(m-1)$  linearly independent equations in  $\frac{1}{2}m(m-1)$  unknowns. The system has the solution  $a_{1j} = a_{j1}$   $i < j$ .

Q.E.D.

Proof (of THEOREM 2.2)

At a stationary point

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= d \operatorname{tr}(XHYK') \\ &= \operatorname{tr}(XdHYK' + XHYdK') \\ &= \operatorname{tr}(XHH'dHYK' + XHYdK'KK'). \end{aligned}$$

Now  $K'dK$  is skew symmetric ( $K'K = I$  implies  $dK'K = -K'dK$ ) as is  $H'dH$ . Make the substitutions  $d\Lambda_1 = H'dH$ ,  $d\Lambda_2 = K'dK$ , then

$$\operatorname{tr}(YK'XHd\Lambda_1 - K'XHYd\Lambda_2) = 0. \quad (2.26)$$

Since  $H, K$  vary independently over  $\mathcal{O}(m)$ , then  $d\Lambda_1, d\Lambda_2$  vary independently over sets of skew matrices and we equate the two terms of (2.26) to zero separately, giving

$$\operatorname{tr}(YK'XHd\Lambda_1) = 0 \quad \operatorname{tr}(K'XHYd\Lambda_2) = 0.$$

Applying the LEMMA 2.2 and putting  $C = K'XH$  gives  $YC$  and  $CY$  symmetric. Then

$$\begin{aligned} YC &= C'Y \\ YC' &= CY \end{aligned} \quad (2.27)$$



and adding

$$Y(C+C') = (C+C')Y.$$

Now  $Y$  is diagonal so in order to commute with  $Y$  we must have  $C+C'$  diagonal. Put  $C+C' = 2D$ , then  $C = D+S$  where  $S$  is skew symmetric.

Substituting in (2.27)

$$Y(D+S) = (D-S)Y$$

i.e.  $YS + SY = 0.$

Put  $S = (s_{ij})$  and write out element by element as

$$(y_i + y_j)s_{ij} = 0 \quad i, j = 1, \dots, m.$$

Then  $s_{ij} = 0$   $i, j = 1, \dots, m.$  Hence  $C$  is diagonal. So  $K'XH = D$  where  $D = \text{diag}(d_i).$

Now

$$D^2 = D'D = H'X^2H \quad (2.28)$$

$$= DD' = K'X^2K \quad (2.29)$$

and equating the right hand sides of (2.28) and (2.29)

$$X^2KH' = KH'X^2.$$

Put  $T = (t_{ij}) = KH'$  and write out element by element as

$$x_i^2 t_{ij} = t_{ij} x_j^2.$$

Thus when  $i \neq j$ ,  $x_i^2 \neq x_j^2$  making  $t_{ij} = 0$  and when  $i=j$   $t_{ii} = \pm 1$  since  $T \in \mathcal{O}(m).$  Hence  $KH' = I^*$  and  $K = I^*H.$

Now  $D = K'XH = H'I^*XH = H'X^*H$  where  $X^* = \text{diag}(\pm x_i)$

and the elements of  $D$  are the same as those of  $X^*$  but in some rearrangement i.e.  $d_i = \pm x_{\sigma(i)}.$  From

$$X^*H = HD, \quad x_i h_{ij} = h_{ij} x_{\sigma(j)} \quad (2.30)$$

comes

$$h_{ij} = \begin{cases} \pm 1 & i = \sigma(j) \quad \text{i.e. } h_{\sigma(j)j} = \pm 1 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

which is the definition of a signed permutation matrix  $H$ .

Also  $K = I^*H$  is a signed permutation matrix with

$k_{\sigma(j)j} = \pm h_{\sigma(j)j}$  depending on the signs of the diagonal elements of  $I^*$ . Q.E.D.

We must now find the stationary points of  $\text{etr}(AH_1BH_2)$  and  $\text{etr}(A^*H_1BH_2)$  for  $H_1, H_2 \in \mathcal{O}^+(m)$ . From the above proof we see that at a stationary point the function takes the value

$$\text{tr}(DY) = \sum_{i=1}^m \pm x_{\sigma(i)} y_i. \quad (2.31)$$

Clearly the absolute maximum is  $\sum x_i y_i$  for  $i = \sigma(i)$ ,

$d_i = x_i$  and  $h_{ii} = \pm 1$ . Now  $D = X$  and substituting in (2.30)  $X^*H = HX$  giving  $X^* = X = I^*X$  and  $I^* = I$ . Thus

$$H = K = \begin{bmatrix} \pm 1 & & & \\ & \cdot & & \\ & & \cdot & \\ & & & \cdot \\ & & & & \pm 1 \end{bmatrix}. \quad (2.32)$$

Applying this result to  $\text{etr}(AH_1BH_2)$  we have  $2^m$  equal maxima of  $\text{etr}(AB)$  at points  $(H_1, H_2)$  where  $H_1 = H_2 = H$  (as in (2.32)) and of these  $2^{m-1}$  have

$H_1, H_2 \in \mathcal{O}^+(m)$ . Thus we will take our asymptotic expansion in the region of those  $H_1, H_2 \in \mathcal{O}^+(m)$  for which  $\text{etr}(AH_1BH_2)$  is near its maximum of  $\text{etr}(AB)$ , on the assumption that for large  $A, B$  this region will also contain all those  $H_1, H_2$  for which  $f(H_1, H_2; A, B)$  is also large. Note also that all the maxima occur at points in the range of integration of  $I_1$  so we can now approximate it.

Now we find the maximum for the dominant term of the integrand of  $I_2$ . That is we must find

$$\max_{H_1, H_2 \in \mathcal{O}^+(m)} \text{tr}(A^*H_1BH_2) \quad (2.33)$$

or in other words

$$\max_{\substack{H_1, H_2 \text{ in different} \\ \text{subsets}}} \text{tr}(AH_1BH_2).$$

From the THEOREM 2.2  $H_2 = H_1' I^* (K = I^*H)$  and for  $H_1, H_2$  to belong to different subsets,  $I^*$  must have an odd number of  $-1$ 's on the diagonal. Let  $D = H_2AH_1 = H_1'(I^*A)H_1$ , then an odd number of the  $d_i = -a_{\sigma(i)}$ . Since there must be at least one negative  $a_i$  it is clear that

$$\text{tr}(DB) = \sum_{i=1}^{m-1} a_i b_i - a_m b_m$$

where  $D = \text{diag}(a_1, \dots, a_{m-1}, -a_m)$ , is the maximum value of  $\text{tr}(AH_1BH_2)$  when  $H_1, H_2$  come from different subsets. At this maximum

$$H_1, H_2 = \begin{bmatrix} \pm 1 & & & \\ & \cdot & & \\ & & \cdot & \\ & & & \cdot \\ & & & & \pm 1 \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{but } H_2 = H_1 J.$$

There are  $2^m$  solution points in all and  $2^{m-1}$  are solutions to (2.33) and hence are maxima in the range of  $I_2$ .

We will see that for large values of  $A$  and  $B$  the integrands of (2.22) will be negligible apart from small neighbourhoods about each maximum. The integral  $I_1$  will consist of identical contributions from each of these  $2^{m-1}$  neighbourhoods, and similarly for  $I_2$ . One solution to the maximisation problem in each case is  $H_1 = H_2 = I$  so (2.22) becomes

$$\begin{aligned} I &\simeq 2^m \int_{N(I)} \int_{N(I)} f(H_1, H_2; A, B) (dH_1) (dH_2) \\ &+ 2^m \int_{N(I)} \int_{N(I)} f(H_1, H_2; A^*, B) (dH_1) (dH_2) \end{aligned} \quad (2.34)$$

where  $N(I)$  is a neighbourhood of  $I$  on the orthogonal manifold  $\mathcal{O}(m)$  and contains only matrices in  $\mathcal{O}^+(m)$ .

We will now focus attention on the approximation of

$$g(A, B) = \int_{N(I)} \int_{N(I)} f(H_1, H_2; A, B) (dH_1) (dH_2) \quad (2.35)$$

but the same methods are valid for  $g(A^*, B)$ .

## 2.7 Approximating the integral

Now in (2.35) both  $H_1, H_2 \in \mathcal{O}^+(m)$  so we apply the parameterisation of section 3. Let  $S = (s_{ij})$ ,  $T = (t_{ij})$  be  $m \times m$  skew symmetric matrices and  $H_1 = (h_{ij})$ ,  $H_2 = (k_{ij})$ . Then

$$H_1 = \exp(S) \quad H_2 = \exp(T)$$

and element by element

$$h_{11} = 1 - \frac{1}{2} \sum_{j=1}^m s_{ij}^2 + o(s^2), \quad k_{11} = 1 - \frac{1}{2} \sum_{j=1}^m t_{ij}^2 + o(t^2)$$

$$i = 1, 2, \dots, m \quad (2.36a)$$

$$h_{ij} = s_{ij} + o(s), \quad k_{ij} = t_{ij} + o(t)$$

$$i \neq j. \quad (2.36b)$$

For the transformation  $H_1 = \exp(S)$  the Jacobian is

$$J(S) = 1 + \frac{m-2}{24} \text{tr } S^2 + \frac{8-m}{4 \cdot 6!} \text{tr } S^4 + \frac{5m^2 - 20m + 14}{8 \cdot 6!} (\text{tr } S^2)^2 + o(s^4)$$

$$(2.37)$$

and similarly for  $H_2 = \exp(T)$ . Also on transformation the ranges of integration become  $N(S=0)$  and  $N(T=0)$ .

It remains to substitute for  $H_1$  and  $H_2$  in  $f(H_1, H_2; A, B)$ . First we have

$$f(H_1, H_2; A, B) = \text{etr}(AH_1BH_2)(1+F(H_1, H_2; A, B)) \quad (2.38)$$

and

$$\text{tr}(AH_1BH_2) = \sum_{i=1}^m a_i b_i h_{1i} k_{1i} + \sum_{i \neq j} a_i b_j h_{ij} k_{ji}.$$

Substituting and simplifying gives

$$\begin{aligned} \text{tr}(AH_1BH_2) &= \sum_{i=1}^m a_i b_i - \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i < j} \{ (a_i b_i + a_j b_j) s_{ij}^2 + (a_i b_i + a_j b_j) t_{ij}^2 \\ &\quad + 2(a_i b_j + a_j b_i) s_{ij} t_{ij} \} + o(s^2). \end{aligned}$$

Each quadratic form can be written in matrix notation as

$$\underline{s}'_{ij} Q_{ij} \underline{s}_{ij} = \begin{bmatrix} s_{ij} & t_{ij} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} a_i b_i + a_j b_j & a_i b_j + a_j b_i \\ a_i b_j + a_j b_i & a_i b_i + a_j b_j \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} s_{ij} \\ t_{ij} \end{bmatrix}$$

so

$$\text{tr}(AH_1BH_2) = \text{tr}(AB) - \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i < j} \underline{s}'_{ij} Q_{ij} \underline{s}_{ij} + o(s^2). \quad (2.39)$$

Substituting in (2.35) using (2.38) and (2.39)

gives

$$\begin{aligned} g(A,B) &\simeq \text{etr}(AB) \int_{N(S=0)} \int_{N(T=0)} \exp\left(-\frac{1}{2} \sum_{i < j} \underline{s}'_{ij} Q_{ij} \underline{s}_{ij}\right) (1+o(s^2)) \\ &\quad \times (1+\varphi(S,T;A,B)) J(S)J(T) \prod_{i < j} ds_{ij} dt_{ij}. \end{aligned} \quad (2.40)$$

For large values of  $a_i, b_i$  the major contribution to the integral is in the region  $(S=0) \cap (T=0)$  so we can extend the range of integration for the  $s_{ij}, t_{ij}$  to  $(-\infty, \infty)$  i.e. integrate over the domains

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{S} &= \bigcup_{i < j} \{s_{ij} : -\infty < s_{ij} < \infty\} \\ \mathcal{T} &= \bigcup_{i < j} \{t_{ij} : -\infty < t_{ij} < \infty\}. \end{aligned}$$

Also from (2.37)

$$J(S)J(T) = 1 + \frac{m-2}{24} \text{tr}(S^2+T^2) + o(s^2) \quad (2.41)$$

and substituting in (2.40) we see that the main asymptotic term is given by the evaluation of

$$K(A,B) = \int_{\mathcal{S}} \int_{\mathcal{T}} \exp\left(-\frac{1}{2} \sum_{i < j} \underline{s}'_{ij} Q_{ij} \underline{s}_{ij}\right) \prod_{i < j} d \underline{s}_{ij}. \quad (2.42)$$

From Appendix 1 section 2 this integral is seen to have the value

$$K(A,B) = \frac{(2\pi)^{\frac{1}{2}m(m-1)}}{\prod_{i < j} c_{ij}^{\frac{1}{2}}} \quad (2.43)$$

where  $c_{ij} = (a_i^2 - a_j^2)(b_i^2 - b_j^2) = (\omega_i - \omega_j)(w_i - w_j)$ .

To obtain further terms of the approximation (2.40) it is necessary to evaluate the first few terms of  $\varphi(S,T;A,B)$  and  $J(S)J(T)$ . The expansion to follow is in terms of  $a_i^{-1}$  and  $b_i^{-1}$  for large  $a_i, b_i$ . From (A.1.4) and (2.20)  $d_1 = -\frac{1}{8}(n-3)(n-m)$  and it is the coefficient of  $C_{(1)}(R^{-1}) = \text{tr}(R^{-1})$  the first term of  $F(H_1, H_2; A, B)$ , where  $R^{-1} = B^{-1}H_1' A^{-1}H_2'$ . Setting

$$A^{-1} = \text{diag}(a_i^{-1}) = \text{diag}(\alpha_i) = (\alpha_i \delta_{ij})$$

$$B^{-1} = \text{diag}(b_i^{-1}) = \text{diag}(\beta_i) = (\beta_i \delta_{ij})$$

leads to

$$\text{tr}(B^{-1}H_1' A^{-1}H_2') = \sum_{i,j} \beta_i \alpha_j h_{ji} k_{ij}$$

and on substitution as for (2.39)

$$\text{tr}(B^{-1}H_1'A^{-1}H_2') = \sum_{i=1}^m \alpha_i \beta_i - \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i < j} \underline{s}'_{ij} P_{ij} \underline{s}_{ij} + o(s^2) \quad (2.44)$$

where

$$P_{ij} = \begin{bmatrix} \alpha_i \beta_i + \alpha_j \beta_j & \alpha_i \beta_j + \alpha_j \beta_i \\ \alpha_i \beta_j + \alpha_j \beta_i & \alpha_i \beta_i + \alpha_j \beta_j \end{bmatrix}$$

$$= \alpha_i \alpha_j \beta_i \beta_j Q_{ij}.$$

Also

$$J(S)J(T) = 1 - \frac{m-2}{12} \sum_{i < j} \underline{s}'_{ij} \underline{s}_{ij} + o(s^2). \quad (2.45)$$

From Appendix 1 section 2 we have

$$g(A,B) \doteq \frac{(2\pi)^{\frac{1}{2}m(m-1)} \text{etr}(AB)}{\prod_{i < j} c_{ij}^{\frac{1}{2}}} G(A,B) \quad (2.46)$$

where

$$G(A,B) = 1 - \frac{1}{6}(m-2) \sum_{i \neq j} \frac{a_i b_i}{c_{ij}} - \frac{1}{8}(n-3)(n-m) \sum_{i=1}^m \frac{1}{a_i b_i}$$

$$+ \frac{1}{8}(n-3)(n-m)(m-2) \left( \sum_{i \neq j} \frac{a_i b_i + a_j b_j}{a_i b_i c_{ij}} + \sum_{i \neq j \neq k} \frac{a_i b_i}{a_k b_k c_{ij}} \right)$$

$$+ \frac{1}{16}(n-3)(n-m) \sum_{i < j} \frac{1}{a_i b_i a_j b_j} + \dots \quad (2.47)$$

## 2.8 Proving the expansion

It is now shown that (2.46) is an asymptotic representation of the integral (2.35). A LEMMA due to HSU [14] is used.

### LEMMA 2.3

Let  $\varphi(u_1, \dots, u_m)$  and  $f(u_1, \dots, u_m)$  be real functions on an  $m$ -dimensional closed domain  $D$  such that



1.  $f > 0$  on  $D$
2.  $(f)^n \varphi$  is absolutely integrable over  $D$ ,  $n = 0, 1, 2, \dots$
3. all partial derivatives  $f_{u_i}$  and  $f_{u_i u_j}$  exist and are continuous,  $i, j = 1, 2, \dots, m$
4.  $f(\underline{u})$  has an absolute maximum at an interior point  $\underline{\xi}$  of  $D$ , so that all  $f_{u_i} \Big|_{\underline{u}=\underline{\xi}} = 0$  and  $\det \left[ -f_{u_i u_j} \Big|_{\underline{u}=\underline{\xi}} \right] > 0$
5.  $\varphi$  is continuous at  $\underline{\xi}$  and  $\varphi(\underline{\xi}) \neq 0$ .

Then for  $n$  large

$$\int_D (f)^n \varphi d\underline{u} \sim \frac{\varphi(\underline{\xi}) [f(\underline{\xi})]^n}{[\Delta(\underline{\xi})]^{\frac{1}{2}}} \left[ \frac{2\pi}{n} \right]^{\frac{1}{2}m} \quad (2.48)$$

where  $f(\underline{u}) = \exp(\psi(\underline{u}))$  and  $\Delta(\underline{u}) = \det[-\psi_{u_i u_j}]$ .

This LEMMA is used to prove directly that (2.46) is an asymptotic expansion of the integral.

### THEOREM 2.3

Let  $A, B$  be  $m \times m$  diagonal matrices with

$$a_1 > a_2 > \dots > a_m > 0$$

$$b_1 > b_2 > \dots > b_m > 0.$$

Then for  $A, B$  large and  $g(A, B)$  defined as in (2.35)

$$g(A, B) \sim \frac{(2\pi)^{\frac{1}{2}m(m-1)} \text{etr}(AB)}{\prod_{i < j} c_{ij}^{\frac{1}{2}}}. \quad (2.49)$$

### Proof

We must show that the conditions of LEMMA 2.3 are satisfied.

Directly after substitution in (2.35) we have

$$g(A,B) = \int_{N(S=0)} \int_{N(T=0)} \text{etr}(AH_1BH_2) (1+\varphi(S,T;A,B)) J(S)J(T) \prod_{1 < j} ds_{1j} dt_{1j}. \quad (2.50)$$

Now set

$$\begin{aligned} A &= a_1 X & x_1 &= a_1^{-1} a_1 \\ B &= b_1 Y & y_1 &= b_1^{-1} b_1 \end{aligned}$$

then

$$\text{etr}(AH_1BH_2) = [\text{etr}(XH_1YH_2)]^{a_1 b_1}. \quad (2.51)$$

The right hand side is of the form  $(f)^n$  where  $a_1 b_1$  corresponds to  $n$  and  $f \equiv \text{etr}(XH_1YH_2)$  is a function of the  $m(m-1)$  variables  $s_{1j}, t_{1j}$   $i < j$ . Also

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi &\equiv (1 + \varphi(S,T;A,B)) J(S)J(T) \\ \psi &\equiv \sum_{i,j} x_i y_j h_{1j} k_{j1} = \text{tr}(XH_1YH_2) \end{aligned}$$

and  $D \equiv N(S=0) \cap N(T=0)$ . Clearly  $\underline{x}$  corresponds to the point  $(S=0, T=0)$  and  $(f)^{a_1 b_1}$  and hence  $f$  have just one maximum in  $N(S=0) \cap N(T=0)$ . At this point  $(S=0, T=0)$

$$(f)^{a_1 b_1} = \text{etr}(AB)$$

and from (A.1.9)

$$\varphi(\underline{x}) = 1 - \frac{1}{8}(n-3)(n-m) \sum_{i=1}^m \frac{1}{a_i b_i} + \dots$$

For large values of  $A$  and  $B$  we have  $\varphi \simeq 1$ .

Now by (2.39), with  $Q_{1j}$  a function of  $x_1, y_1$

$$\psi = \sum_1 x_1 y_1 - \frac{1}{2} \sum_{1 < j} s_{1j} Q_{1j} s_{1j} + o(s^2).$$

Then

$$\frac{\partial \psi}{\partial \underline{s}_{1j}} = -Q_{1j} \underline{s}_{1j} + o(s). \quad (2.52)$$

Since  $f(S,T) = \exp(\psi(S,T))$

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial \underline{s}_{1j}} = \frac{\partial \psi}{\partial \underline{s}_{1j}} \exp(\psi(S,T))$$

and at  $(S=0, T=0)$

$$\frac{\partial \psi}{\partial \underline{s}_{1j}} = \frac{\partial f}{\partial \underline{s}_{1j}} = 0.$$

Thus all conditions of LEMMA 2.3 are satisfied and it remains to evaluate  $\Delta(S,T)$ . Differentiating (2.52) further

$$\frac{\partial^2 \psi}{\partial \underline{s}_{1j} \partial \underline{s}_{1j}} = -Q_{1j} + \text{terms of degree at least one}$$

$$\frac{\partial^2 \psi}{\partial \underline{s}_{1j} \partial \underline{s}_{uv}} = 0 + \text{terms of degree at least one}$$

$$\begin{aligned} & i < j \quad u < v \\ & i \neq u \quad \text{or} \quad j \neq v \end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta(S,T) &= \det \left[ - \frac{\partial^2 \psi}{\partial \underline{s}_{1j} \partial \underline{s}_{uv}} \Big|_{S=0, T=0} \right] \\ &= \prod_{i < j} \det Q_{1j} \\ &= \prod_{i < j} (x_1^2 - x_j^2) (y_1^2 - y_j^2). \end{aligned}$$

Hence

$$\begin{aligned} g(A,B) &\sim \frac{\text{etr}(AB) \cdot 1}{\prod_{i < j} [(x_1^2 - x_j^2) (y_1^2 - y_j^2)]^{\frac{1}{2}}} \left[ \frac{2\pi}{a_1 b_1} \right]^{\frac{1}{2} m(m-1)} \\ &= \frac{(2\pi)^{\frac{1}{2} m(m-1)} \text{etr}(AB)}{\prod_{i < j} c_{1j}^{\frac{1}{2}}}. \quad \text{Q.E.D.} \end{aligned}$$

Returning to (2.34) we have

$$I \simeq 2^m g(A,B) + 2^m g(A^*,B) \quad (2.53)$$

and it is easy to show that asymptotically the term  $g(A^*,B)$  is swamped by  $g(A,B)$ .

LEMMA 2.4

$$\lim_{a_m, b_m \rightarrow \infty} \frac{g(A^*,B)}{g(A,B)} = 0. \quad (2.54)$$

Proof

Substituting the approximations (2.49)

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{g(A^*,B)}{g(A,B)} &\simeq \frac{\text{etr}(A^*B)}{\text{etr}(AB)} \\ &= \exp(-2a_m b_m) \\ &\rightarrow 0 \text{ as } a_m, b_m \rightarrow \infty. \quad \text{Q.E.D.} \end{aligned} \quad (2.55)$$

Thus from (2.55), (2.53) can be written as

$$I \simeq 2^m g(A,B) (1 + O(\exp(-2a_m b_m))) \text{ for large } A, B. \quad (2.56)$$

That is, the effect of  $g(A^*,B)$  can be ignored for all practical purposes. To achieve better accuracy it would be better to determine more terms of the series  $G(A,B)$  than to include the terms of  $g(A^*,B)$ . Some more terms are listed in Appendix 1 section 3(A.1.16).

## 2.9 Summary

From (2.20) and (2.34) remembering that  $A^2 = \Omega$ ,

$$B^2 = W$$

$${}_0F_1^{(m)}\left(\frac{1}{2}n; \frac{1}{2}\Omega, W\right) \simeq k_6 \det(AB)^{-\frac{1}{2}(n-m)} [g(A,B) + g(A^*,B)] \quad (2.57)$$

and by (2.56) the term  $g(A^*, B)$  can be neglected, so we have proved the

THEOREM 2.4

For large values of the non-centrality parameters and of the latent roots  $w_1$ , the Bessel function has the asymptotic expansion, for  $n \geq 2m$ , of

$${}_0F_1^{(m)}\left(\frac{1}{2}n; \frac{1}{4}\Omega, W\right) \sim k \frac{\text{etr}(AB)}{\prod_{i < j} c_{ij}^{\frac{1}{2}} \det(AB)^{\frac{1}{2}(n-m)}} G(A, B) \quad (2.58)$$

where  $a_1^2 = \omega_1$ ,  $b_1^2 = w_1$ ,  $c_{ij} = (a_i^2 - a_j^2)(b_i^2 - b_j^2)$ ,

$$k = \frac{2^{\frac{1}{2}m(n-3)} \Gamma_m\left(\frac{1}{2}m\right) \Gamma_m\left(\frac{1}{2}n\right)}{\pi^{\frac{1}{2}m(m+1)}}$$

and

$$G(A, B) = 1 - \frac{1}{8}(m-2) \sum_{i \neq j} \frac{a_i b_i}{c_{ij}} - \frac{1}{8}(n-3)(n-m) \sum_{i=1}^m \frac{1}{a_i b_i} + o\left(\frac{1}{a^2}\right). \quad (2.59)$$

The numerical assessment of this result is left to Chapter 8, where all the various approximations are examined together. An idea of the range of values of  $\Omega$  and  $W$  for which this is a good approximation will also be specified.

Setting  $m=1$  in (2.58) and (2.59) and ignoring all summations involving more than one index gives us the approximation outlined in Chapter 1.

$${}_0F_1\left(\frac{1}{2}n; \frac{1}{4}a^2 b^2\right) \sim \frac{2^{\frac{1}{2}(n-3)} \Gamma\left(\frac{1}{2}n\right) e^{ab}}{\sqrt{\pi} (ab)^{\frac{1}{2}(n-1)}} \left(1 - \frac{(n-1)(n-3)}{8ab}\right). \quad (2.60)$$

CHAPTER 3  
STATISTICAL APPLICATIONS

3.1 Introduction

In this Chapter we consider an alternative derivation of the asymptotic representation for the Bessel function of two argument matrices using a parameterisation of the Stiefel manifold given by JAMES [23]. The parameterisation is similar to that used for  $O^+(m)$  in Chapter 2, but the substitution can be made without integrating out all implicit variables.

In section 2 the leading (asymptotic) term is derived for the case considered in Chapter 2 i.e. both argument matrices are of full rank, while in section 4 the technique is extended to derive the asymptotic term when one of the matrices is not of full rank.

Two statistical problems are dealt with:

1. In section 3 the non-centrality parameters are estimated by maximum likelihood.
2. In section 5 a likelihood ratio test for the rank of the matrix of means  $M$  is derived and its sampling distribution is considered.

The final section ties the results of section 5 to the work of BARTLETT [4], [5] and LAWLEY [26] in deriving multivariate tests of hypothesis.

### 3.2 The Stiefel manifold

We use as our starting point (2.9) of Chapter 2 i.e.

$$oF_1^{(m)}(\frac{1}{2}n; \frac{1}{2}\Omega, W) = k_3 \int_{\mathcal{O}(m)} (dH_1) \int_{\mathcal{V}_{nm}} (dH_2) \text{etr} \left( \begin{bmatrix} AH_1BH_2^1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \right) \quad (3.1)$$

where  $k_3 = [\text{Vol}(\mathcal{O}(m))\text{Vol}(\mathcal{V}_{nm})]^{-1}$ .

If  $H_2^1 \in \mathcal{V}_{nm}$  is partitioned as  $H_2^1 = [H_2^{11} \quad H_2^{12}]$  the integrand of (3.1) becomes  $\text{etr}(AH_1BH_2^{11})$ . It is necessary to determine where the maximum of this function occurs.

Since  $H_2^{11}$  is the top left hand corner of an orthogonal matrix, its elements must satisfy the inequalities  $(H_2 = (k_{ij}) \quad i, j = 1, \dots, m)$

$$|k_{ij}| \leq 1 \quad i, j = 1, 2, \dots, m.$$

It is easily seen that the maximum of  $\text{etr}(AB)$  is attained at the matrices

$$H_1 = H_2^{11} = \begin{bmatrix} \pm 1 & & & \\ & \cdot & & \\ & & \cdot & \\ & & & \pm 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

giving  $H_2^1$  the form  $[H_2^{11} \quad 0]$ . There are  $2^m$  equal maxima.

It is also clear that we again have the second maximum of  $\text{etr}(A^*B)$  but in the following derivations it is ignored.

Since there is an equal contribution from each of the

$2^m$  neighbourhoods of the equal maxima we write (3.1) as

$${}_0F_1^{(m)}\left(\frac{1}{2}n; \frac{1}{2}\Omega, W\right) \simeq 2^m k_3 \int_{N(I)} (dH_1) \int_{N([I \ 0])} (dH_2^1) \text{etr}(AH_1 B H_2^{1^1}). \quad (3.2)$$

Again  $N(I)$  contains only matrices in  $\theta^+(m)$  so  $H_1$  can be parameterised. Also JAMES [23] has given a parameterisation of the Stiefel manifold. Thus we can parameterise  $H_1, H_2^1$  by

$$H_1 = \exp(S)$$

$$H_2 = \begin{bmatrix} H_2^1 \\ H_2^2 \end{bmatrix} = \exp\left(\begin{bmatrix} T_{11} & T_{12} \\ -T_{12}' & 0 \end{bmatrix}\right)$$

where  $S, T_{11}$  are  $m \times m$  skew matrices and  $T_{12}$  is an  $m \times (n-m)$  rectangular matrix.

If we let  $H_1 = (h_{ij}), S = (s_{ij}), T = (t_{ij})$  with  $t_{ij} = 0, i$  and  $j > m$ , then writing out the elements

$$\begin{aligned} h_{ii} &= 1 - \frac{1}{2} \sum_{j=1}^m s_{ij}^2 + o(s^2) & i &= 1, \dots, m \\ h_{ij} &= s_{ij} + o(s) & i, j &= 1, \dots, m \quad i \neq j \\ k_{ii} &= 1 - \frac{1}{2} \sum_{j=1}^n t_{ij}^2 + o(t^2) & i &= 1, \dots, m \\ k_{ij} &= t_{ij} + o(t) & i, j &= 1, \dots, n, \quad i \neq j. \end{aligned}$$

From the integrand of (3.2), neglecting terms of degree greater than 2,

$$\begin{aligned} \text{tr}(AH_1 B H_2^{1^1}) &= \sum_{i,j=1}^m a_i b_j h_{ij} k_{ji} \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^m a_i b_i \left(1 - \frac{1}{2} \sum_{j=1}^m s_{ij}^2\right) \left(1 - \frac{1}{2} \sum_{j=1}^n t_{ij}^2\right) - \sum_{i,j=1}^m a_i b_j s_{ij} t_{ij} \\ &= \text{tr}(AB) - \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i < j} s_{ij}^2 Q_{ij} - \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i=1}^m \sum_{j=m+1}^n a_i b_j t_{ij}^2 \end{aligned} \quad (3.3)$$



where

$$Q_{1j} = \begin{bmatrix} a_1 b_1 + a_j b_j & a_1 b_j + a_j b_1 \\ a_1 b_j + a_j b_1 & a_1 b_1 + a_j b_j \end{bmatrix} \underline{s}_{1j} = \begin{bmatrix} s_{1j} \\ t_{1j} \end{bmatrix}.$$

For the Jacobian of the transformation

$$(dH_1)(dH_2^1) = (dS)(dT_{11})(dT_{12})(1 + o(s)) \quad (3.4)$$

where  $(dS)$ ,  $(dT_{11})$ ,  $(dT_{12})$  stand for  $\bigwedge_{1 < j}^m ds_{1j}$ ,  $\bigwedge_{1 < j}^m dt_{1j}$

and  $\bigwedge_{i=1}^m \bigwedge_{j=m+1}^n dt_{1j}$  respectively.

Substitute (3.3) and (3.4) in the integrand of (3.2).

Since the integrand tends to zero as  $|s_{1j}|$ ,  $|t_{1j}|$  tend to  $\infty$ , we can change the range of integration to  $-\infty < s_{1j} < \infty$ ,  $-\infty < t_{1j} < \infty$  to obtain the leading term of the asymptotic series.

Hence for large values of  $A$  and  $B$

$$\begin{aligned} & \frac{\int (dH_1)}{N(I)} \frac{\int (dH_2^1)}{N([IO])} \text{etr}(AH_1 B H_2^{1^1}) \\ &= \text{etr}(AB) \int_S \int_{T_{11}} \prod_{1 < j}^m \exp(-\frac{1}{2} \underline{s}_{1j} Q_{1j} \underline{s}_{1j}) d\underline{s}_{1j} \\ & \quad \times \int_{T_{12}} \prod_{i=1}^m \prod_{j=m+1}^n \exp(-\frac{1}{2} a_i b_i t_{ij}^2) dt_{ij} \\ & \triangleq \text{etr}(AB) \prod_{1 < j} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \exp(-\frac{1}{2} \underline{s}_{1j} Q_{1j} \underline{s}_{1j}) d\underline{s}_{1j} \\ & \quad \prod_{i=1}^m \prod_{j=m+1}^n \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \exp(-\frac{1}{2} a_i b_i t_{ij}^2) dt_{ij} \end{aligned}$$

$$= \frac{\text{etr}(AB) (2\pi)^{\frac{1}{2}m(m-1)} (2\pi)^{\frac{1}{2}m(n-m)}}{\prod_{1 < j} c_{1j}^{\frac{1}{2}} \det(AB)^{\frac{1}{2}(n-m)}} \quad (3.5)$$

where  $c_{1j} = (a_i^2 - a_j^2)(b_i^2 - b_j^2)$ .

To summarise we substitute (3.5) in (3.2) to obtain

$${}_0F_1^{(m)}\left(\frac{1}{2}n; \frac{1}{2}\Omega, W\right) \sim K \frac{\text{etr}(AB)}{\prod_{1 < j} c_{1j}^{\frac{1}{2}} \det(AB)^{\frac{1}{2}(n-m)}} \quad (3.6)$$

where

$$K = \frac{2^{\frac{1}{2}m(n-3)} \Gamma_m\left(\frac{1}{2}m\right) \Gamma_m\left(\frac{1}{2}n\right)}{\pi^{\frac{1}{2}m(m+1)}}.$$

This result is the same as the dominant asymptotic term of (2.61). The method of this chapter is much simpler for determining the leading term but it appears to be much more difficult to extend in order to obtain further terms of the series.

### 3.3 Maximum marginal likelihood estimation

The likelihood factor for the non-central means with known covariance distribution is

$$\text{etr}\left(-\frac{1}{2}\Omega\right) {}_0F_1^{(m)}\left(\frac{1}{2}n; \frac{1}{2}\Omega, W\right).$$

We are interested in finding maximum likelihood estimates for  $\omega_1, \dots, \omega_h$  from the marginal distribution of  $w_1, \dots, w_m$ .

Using the asymptotic results, the likelihood function can be factorised as

$$L(\omega_1, \dots, \omega_h) = K(w_1, \dots, w_m) L_1 L_2 G \quad (3.7)$$

where

$$L_1 = \text{etr}(-\frac{1}{2}\Omega) \text{etr}(\Omega W)^{\frac{1}{2}} \quad (3.8)$$

$$L_2 = \det \Omega^{-\frac{1}{2}(n-m)} \prod_{i < j} (\omega_i - \omega_j)^{-\frac{1}{2}} \quad (3.9)$$

$G$  is the asymptotic series (2.47) and  $K$  is a function not involving  $\omega_1, \dots, \omega_m$ .

We begin by finding an estimate  $\hat{\omega}_1$  for  $\omega_1$  using  $L_1$  only and improve it by using  $L_1 L_2$ . The function  $G$  is shown to have negligible effect for large enough values of the  $w_1$ . The method of estimation is also due to ANDERSON [1].

Taking (3.8)

$$l_1 = \ln L_1 = -\frac{1}{2} \sum_{i=1}^m \omega_i + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i=1}^m (\omega_i w_i)^{\frac{1}{2}}.$$

Differentiating and equating to zero gives

$$\frac{\partial l_1}{\partial \omega_1} = -\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2} \frac{w_1^{\frac{1}{2}}}{\omega_1^{\frac{3}{2}}} = 0$$

and the approximate maximum likelihood estimate

$$\hat{\omega}_1 = w_1. \quad (3.10)$$

Now we consider the effect that the function  $L_2$  has on this estimate. First expand the terms of  $l_2 = \ln L_2$  in a Taylor series about the points  $\hat{\omega}_1$ . From (3.9)

$$l_2 = -\frac{1}{2}(n-m) \sum_{i=1}^m \ln \omega_i - \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i < j} \ln(\omega_i - \omega_j).$$

Taking the terms separately, with  $\omega_i = \hat{\omega}_1 + \delta\omega_i$

$$\begin{aligned} \ln \omega_i &= \ln \hat{\omega}_1 + \ln \left( 1 + \frac{\delta\omega_i}{\hat{\omega}_1} \right) \\ &= f_1(\hat{\omega}_1) + \frac{\delta\omega_i}{\hat{\omega}_1} + \dots \end{aligned}$$

$$\ln(\omega_1 - \omega_j) = g_{1j}(\hat{\omega}_1, \hat{\omega}_j) + \frac{\delta\omega_1 - \delta\omega_j}{\hat{\omega}_1 - \hat{\omega}_j} + \dots$$

Combining these results with (3.8) gives

$$l = \ln L_1 L_2 = -\frac{1}{2} \sum_{i=1}^m \omega_i + \sum_{i=1}^m (\omega_i w_i)^{\frac{1}{2}} - \frac{1}{4} (n-m) \sum_{i=1}^m \frac{\delta\omega_i}{\hat{\omega}_i} \\ - \frac{1}{2} \sum_{1 < j} \frac{\delta\omega_1 - \delta\omega_j}{\hat{\omega}_1 - \hat{\omega}_j} + \dots + \Theta(\hat{\omega}_1, \dots, \hat{\omega}_n)$$

where  $\Theta$  is the sum of the functions  $f_i$  and  $g_{ij}$  and is independent of  $\omega_1, \dots, \omega_n, \delta\omega_1, \dots, \delta\omega_n$ .

Differentiating

$$\frac{\partial l}{\partial \omega_1} = -\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2} \frac{w_1^{\frac{1}{2}}}{\omega_1^{\frac{3}{2}}} - \frac{1}{4} \frac{n-m}{\hat{\omega}_1} - \frac{1}{2} \sum_{j \neq 1} \frac{1}{\hat{\omega}_1 - \hat{\omega}_j} + \dots$$

Equating to zero and substituting  $w_1$  for  $\hat{\omega}_1$ ,

$$\hat{\omega}_1^{\frac{1}{2}} = w_1^{\frac{1}{2}} \left( 1 + \frac{n-m}{2w_1} + \sum_{j \neq 1} \frac{1}{w_1 - w_j} + \dots \right)^{-1}$$

Squaring and expanding binomially,

$$\hat{\omega}_1 = w_1 - (n-m) - 2 \sum_{j \neq 1} \frac{w_1 w_j}{w_1 - w_j} + \dots \quad (3.11)$$

At this point it would appear that this estimate could be improved by including the effect of  $G$ . By considering a numerical example I will show that for large values of  $\omega_1, w_1$  and for small  $n$  the contribution of  $G$  is negligible, but not so the correction made by including  $L_2$ .

Suppose from a normal sample with  $m=3, n=10$  sample latent roots of  $w_1=100, w_2=64, w_3=36$  were obtained.

Using (3.11) the estimates for the  $\omega_1$  are easily calculated.

The exact log likelihood function was approximated by  $l_1+l_2+g$  where  $g = \ln G^*$  and  $G^*$  is the series (2.47) truncated after four terms. An iterative method was used to locate the function maximum and its coordinates.

Comparing the two sets of results.

	iterative	(3.11)	relative error(%)
$\omega_1$	83.20	84.32	1.35
$\omega_2$	56.24	55.98	0.46
$\omega_3$	33.52	32.70	2.45

All relative errors fall within reasonable bounds.

At these values  $l = 72.92$ ,  $l_1 = 99.47$ ,  $l_2 = -26.10$  while  $g = -0.45$ . Small changes in the  $\omega_1$  have much greater effect on the values of  $l_1, l_2$  than on  $g$ .

Estimation from the marginal distribution is stated by JAMES [22] to lead to unbiased estimates. He illustrates this by showing that marginal likelihood estimates for the latent roots of the covariance matrix are unbiased. In order to show the estimates (3.11) are unbiased estimates of the  $\omega_1$  it would be necessary to determine  $E[w_1]$ .

### 3.4 One argument matrix not of full rank

Using the parameterisation for the Stiefel manifold it is possible to easily derive the leading term of the asymptotic expansion of the Bessel function when one of the

argument matrices is not of full rank but all non-zero latent roots are large. In the statistical applications this corresponds to  $\Omega$ , the matrix of non-centrality parameters, not being of full rank. One application is considered in the next section.

From sections 2.3, 2.4 the integrand of (2.6) can be reduced to  $\text{etr}(AH_1BH_2^{1/2})$  so the equation can be written as

$${}_0F_1^{(m)}\left(\frac{1}{2}n; \frac{1}{2}\Omega, W\right) = k_1 \int_{\mathcal{O}(m)} (dH_1) \int_{\mathcal{O}(n)} (dH_2) \text{etr}(AH_1BH_2^{1/2}) \quad (3.12)$$

where  $k_1 = [\text{Vol}(\mathcal{O}(m))\text{Vol}(\mathcal{O}(n))]^{-1}$ .

Let the matrix  $A$  (and hence  $\Omega = A^2$ ) have rank  $k < m$ . That is

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} A_1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{matrix} k \\ m-k \end{matrix} \quad A_1 = \text{diag}(a_1).$$

As before we can integrate out over subsets of the orthogonal manifold and since  $A$  is of lower rank here, the remaining domains of integration are Stiefel manifolds of lower dimension. Partition the matrices  $H_1$  and  $H_2^{1/2}$  as

$$H_1 = \begin{bmatrix} H_1^1 \\ H_1^2 \\ \vdots \\ H_1^m \end{bmatrix} \begin{matrix} k \\ m-k \\ \vdots \\ m \end{matrix} \quad H_2^{1/2} = \begin{bmatrix} K^1 & K^2 \\ \vdots & \vdots \\ K^k & K^{m-k} \end{bmatrix} \begin{matrix} m \\ \vdots \\ m \end{matrix}.$$

The exponent of the integrand of (3.12) becomes

$$\text{tr} \left\{ \begin{bmatrix} A_1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} H_1^1 \\ \vdots \\ H_1^m \end{bmatrix} B \begin{bmatrix} K^1 & K^2 \\ \vdots & \vdots \end{bmatrix} \right\}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= \text{tr} \left\{ \begin{bmatrix} A_1 H_1^1 B K^1 & A_1 H_1^1 B K^2 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \right\} \\
&= \text{tr} (A_1 H_1^1 B K^1). \tag{3.13}
\end{aligned}$$

Now  $\text{tr}(A_1 H_1^1 B K^1)$  contains only elements of  $H_1^1 \in \mathcal{V}_{mk}$  and of  $K$  where

$$K = \begin{bmatrix} K^1 \\ K^* \end{bmatrix} \begin{matrix} m \\ n-m \end{matrix} \in \mathcal{V}_{nk}.$$

$k$

We can integrate out over  $H_1^2$  for fixed  $H_1^1$  and over  $H_2^2$  for fixed  $K$  by the formulae

$$\int_{H_1^2} (dH_1) = c_1 (dH_1^1) \quad \int_{H_2^2} (dH_2) = c_2 (dK)$$

where

$$H_2 = \begin{bmatrix} K & H_2^2 \end{bmatrix} \begin{matrix} n \\ k \quad n-k \end{matrix}$$

$$c_1 = \frac{\text{Vol}(\mathcal{O}(m))}{\text{Vol}(\mathcal{V}_{mk})} \quad c_2 = \frac{\text{Vol}(\mathcal{O}(n))}{\text{Vol}(\mathcal{V}_{nk})}.$$

The equation (3.12) becomes

$${}_0F_1^{(m)} \left( \frac{1}{2}n; \frac{1}{2}\Omega, W \right) = k_2 \int_{\mathcal{V}_{mk}} (dH_1^1) \int_{\mathcal{V}_{nk}} (dK) \text{etr}(A_1 H_1^1 B K^1) \tag{3.14}$$

where  $k_2 = c_1 c_2 k_1 = [\text{Vol}(\mathcal{V}_{mk}) \text{Vol}(\mathcal{V}_{nk})]^{-1}$ .

Let  $k+q = m$  and partition  $B$  into

$$B = \begin{bmatrix} B_1 & 0 \\ 0 & B_2 \end{bmatrix} \begin{matrix} k \\ q \end{matrix}$$

where  $B_1, B_2$  are both diagonal matrices. Then  $\text{tr}(A_1 H_1^1 B K^1)$  has  $2^k$  equal maxima of  $\text{tr}(A_1 B_1)$  at the matrices

$$H_1^1 = \begin{bmatrix} I^* & 0 \\ k & q \end{bmatrix} \quad K^1 = \begin{bmatrix} I^* \\ 0 \\ k \end{bmatrix}$$

where

$$I^* = \begin{bmatrix} \pm 1 & & & \\ & \cdot & & \\ & & \cdot & \\ & & & \pm 1 \end{bmatrix} \cdot$$

Thus (3.14) becomes approximately

$${}_0F_1^{(m)} \left( \frac{1}{2}n; \frac{1}{2}\Omega, W \right) \simeq 2^k k_2 \int_{N([IO])} (dH_1^1) \int_{N\left(\begin{bmatrix} I \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}\right)} (dK) \text{etr}(A_1 H_1^1 B K^1). \quad (3.15)$$

Now  $H_1^1$  and  $K$  can be parameterised by

$$H_1 = \begin{bmatrix} H_1^1 \\ H_1^2 \end{bmatrix} = \exp \left( \begin{bmatrix} S_{11} & S_{12} \\ -S_{12}' & 0 \end{bmatrix} \right)$$

$$H_2 = \begin{bmatrix} K & H_2^2 \end{bmatrix} = \exp \left( \begin{bmatrix} T_{11} & T_{12} \\ -T_{12}' & 0 \end{bmatrix} \right)$$

where  $S_{11}, T_{11}$  are  $k \times k$  skew matrices and  $S_{12}$   $k \times q$  and  $T_{12}$   $k \times (n-k)$  are rectangular matrices. With the obvious definitions for  $S, T$  and their elements,



$$h_{1i} = 1 - \frac{1}{2} \sum_{j=1}^m s_{ij}^2 + \dots \quad i = 1, \dots, k$$

$$h_{1j} = s_{1j} + \dots \quad i = 1, \dots, k, j = 1, \dots, m$$

$$k_{1i} = 1 - \frac{1}{2} \sum_{j=1}^n t_{ij}^2 + \dots \quad i = 1, \dots, k$$

$$k_{1j} = t_{1j} + \dots \quad i = 1, \dots, m, j = 1, \dots, k.$$

For the integrand of (3.15), neglecting terms of degree greater than 2,

$$\begin{aligned} \text{tr}(A_1 H_1^1 B K^1) &= \sum_{i=1}^k \sum_{j=1}^m a_i b_j h_{1j} k_{ji} \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^k a_i b_i \left(1 - \frac{1}{2} \sum_{j=1}^m s_{ij}^2\right) \left(1 - \frac{1}{2} \sum_{j=1}^n t_{ij}^2\right) - \sum_{i=1}^k \sum_{j=1}^m a_i b_j s_{1j} t_{1j} \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^k a_i b_i - \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i=1}^k \sum_{j=1}^k \{a_i b_i s_{ij}^2 + a_i b_i t_{ij}^2 + 2a_i b_j s_{1j} t_{1j}\} \\ &\quad - \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i=1}^k \sum_{j=k+1}^m \{a_i b_i s_{ij}^2 + a_i b_i t_{ij}^2 + 2a_i b_j s_{1j} t_{1j}\} \\ &\quad - \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i=1}^k \sum_{j=m+1}^n a_i b_i t_{ij}^2. \end{aligned}$$

This expression can be summarised in the notation of quadratic forms as before to facilitate using the standard integral (A.1.5). Let  $\underline{s}_{1j}$  and  $Q_{1j}$  be as defined in section 2 and

$$Q_{1j}^* = \begin{bmatrix} a_i b_i & a_i b_j \\ a_i b_j & a_i b_i \end{bmatrix}.$$

Since  $\det Q_{1j}^* = a_i^2 (b_i^2 - b_j^2) > 0$ ,  $Q_{1j}^*$  is positive definite.

Then

$$\begin{aligned} & \text{tr}(A_1 H_1^1 B K^1) \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^k a_i b_i^{-\frac{1}{2}} \sum_{1 < j}^k \underline{s}'_{ij} Q_{ij} \underline{s}_{ij}^{-\frac{1}{2}} \sum_{i=1}^k \sum_{j=k+1}^m \underline{s}'_{ij} Q_{ij}^* \underline{s}_{ij}^{-\frac{1}{2}} \sum_{i=1}^k \sum_{j=m+1}^n a_i b_i t_{ij}^2. \end{aligned} \quad (3.16)$$

For the Jacobian of the transformation

$$(dH_1^1)(dK) = (dS_{11})(dS_{12})(dT_{11})(dT_{12})(1 + o(s)) \quad (3.17)$$

where  $(dS_{11}), (dS_{12}), (dT_{11}), (dT_{12})$  stand for  $\bigwedge_{1 < j}^k ds_{ij}$ ,

$\bigwedge_{i=1}^k \bigwedge_{j=k+1}^m ds_{ij}$ ,  $\bigwedge_{1 < j}^k dt_{ij}$ ,  $\bigwedge_{i=1}^k \bigwedge_{j=m+1}^n dt_{ij}$  respectively.

Again the method is to substitute (3.16) and (3.17) in the integral of (3.15) and change the range of integration to  $-\infty < s_{ij}, t_{ij} < \infty$  to obtain the asymptotic representation.

$$\begin{aligned} & \int (dH_1^1) \int (dK) \text{etr}(A_1 H_1^1 B K^1) \\ & N([\text{IO}]) N\left(\begin{bmatrix} I \\ O \end{bmatrix}\right) \\ & \triangleq \exp\left(\sum_{i=1}^k a_i b_i\right) \prod_{1 < j}^k \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \exp\left(-\frac{1}{2} \underline{s}'_{ij} Q_{ij} \underline{s}_{ij}\right) d\underline{s}_{ij} \\ & \times \prod_{i=1}^k \prod_{j=k+1}^m \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \exp\left(-\frac{1}{2} \underline{s}'_{ij} Q_{ij}^* \underline{s}_{ij}\right) d\underline{s}_{ij} \\ & \times \prod_{i=1}^k \prod_{j=m+1}^n \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \exp\left(-\frac{1}{2} a_i b_i t_{ij}^2\right) dt_{ij} \end{aligned}$$

$$= \frac{\exp\left(\sum_{i=1}^k a_i b_i\right) (2\pi)^{\frac{1}{2}k(k-1)} (2\pi)^{\frac{1}{2}kq} (2\pi)^{\frac{1}{2}k(n-m)}}{\prod_{i < j} c_{ij} \prod_{i=1}^k [a_i^2 (b_i^2 - b_j^2)]^{\frac{1}{2}} \prod_{i=1}^k (a_i b_i)^{\frac{1}{2}(n-m)}} \cdot \quad (3.18)$$

Finally the substitution of (3.18) in (3.15) gives

$${}_0F_1^{(m)}\left(\frac{1}{2}n; \frac{1}{2}\Omega, W\right) \sim$$

$$\frac{K \exp\left(\sum_{i=1}^k a_i b_i\right)}{\prod_{i < j} c_{ij} \prod_{i=1}^k [a_i^2 (b_i^2 - b_j^2)]^{\frac{1}{2}} \prod_{i=1}^k (a_i b_i)^{\frac{1}{2}(n-m)}} \quad (3.19)$$

where

$$K = \frac{2^{\frac{1}{2}k(n-k-2)} \Gamma_k\left(\frac{1}{2}m\right) \Gamma_k\left(\frac{1}{2}n\right)}{\pi^{\frac{1}{2}k(m+1)}} \cdot$$

For  $k=m$  this agrees with (3.6).

### 3.5 A BARTLETT-LAWLEY type test of rank

The aim is to develop a likelihood ratio test on the rank of the matrix of means  $M$ . This is also a test on the number of non-zero non-centrality parameters  $\omega_i$ . The equivalence of the two follows from

LEMMA 3.1

$$\text{rank}(M) = \text{number of non-zero } \omega_i. \quad (3.20)$$

Proof

Since the covariance matrix  $\Sigma$  is positive definite

$$\text{rank}(M) = \text{rank}(MM') = \text{rank}(\Sigma^{-\frac{1}{2}}MM'\Sigma^{-\frac{1}{2}})$$

where  $\Sigma^{-\frac{1}{2}}$  is the positive definite square root of  $\Sigma^{-1}$ .

The matrix  $\Sigma^{-\frac{1}{2}}MM'\Sigma^{-\frac{1}{2}}$  is symmetric and hence its rank is equal to the number of non-zero latent roots. The matrix  $\Sigma^{-1}MM'$  has the same latent roots. Q.E.D.

First we consider the likelihood ratio test of the hypothesis  $H_0: M = 0$

against  $H_1: M$  arbitrary.

On the alternate hypothesis the likelihood function is

$$L(M) = [2\pi]^{-\frac{1}{2}mn} \det \Sigma^{-\frac{1}{2}n} \text{etr}[-\frac{1}{2}\Sigma^{-1}(X-M)(X-M)']$$

and the test statistic is

$$\lambda = \text{etr}(-\frac{1}{2}\Sigma^{-1}XX') = \text{etr}(-\frac{1}{2}W). \quad (3.21)$$

Now

$$-2 \ln \lambda = \text{tr } W = w_1 + \dots + w_m \quad (3.22)$$

and putting  $X = (x_1 \dots x_n)$  where  $x_i$  an  $m \times 1$  column vector

$$\text{tr } W = \text{tr } \Sigma^{-1}XX' = \sum_{i=1}^n x_i' \Sigma^{-1} x_i.$$

On  $H_0$  each term has a  $\chi^2$  distribution on  $m$  degrees of freedom so  $\text{tr } W$  has a  $\chi^2$  distribution on  $mn$  degrees of freedom.

A more general hypothesis is now considered. We wish to test  $H_0: M$  has rank  $k < m$   
against  $H_1: M$  arbitrary.

By LEMMA 3.1 this is equivalent to the test of

$$H_0: \omega_{k+1} = \dots = \omega_m = 0$$

against  $H_1: \text{all } \omega_i > 0.$

We now derive the test statistic and consider its asymptotic distribution. The test statistic used is

$$\Lambda = -2 \ln \lambda = w_{k+1} + \dots + w_m \quad (3.23)$$

and rather than interrupt the argument at this point, the long but straightforward derivation is given in Appendix 2.

The derivation is a modification of one given by RAO [30]. There he is considering what he calls a test of dimensionality on the matrix of means.

It is interesting that the criterion  $\Lambda$  is derivable, as most BARTLETT-LAWLEY type test statistics for testing these intermediate hypotheses, such as the test that a subset of the latent roots of the covariance matrix are equal, are merely a contraction of the statistic derived for the overall test, such as the sphericity test.

Now by asymptotic theory  $\Lambda$  is distributed as  $\chi^2$  where degrees of freedom = number of parameters in  $H_1$   
 - number of parameters in  $H_0$ .

The null hypothesis states that  $M$  has rank  $k$ . This means that  $k$  row vectors of  $M$  are linearly independent and the remaining  $m-k$  rows are unknown linear combinations of these. Thus  $H_0$  involves  $kn + k(m-k)$  parameters. Clearly  $H_1$  involves  $mn$ . Hence there are  $(m-k)(n-k)$  degrees of freedom for  $\chi^2$ .

Summarising

## THEOREM 3.1

To test  $H_0 : M$  has rank  $k < m$  against  $H_1 : M$  arbitrary, use the statistic

$$\Lambda = W_{k+1} + \dots + W_m.$$

On  $H_0$   $\Lambda \sim \chi_d^2$  where  $d = (m-k)(n-k)$ .

In the spirit of LAWLEY [26] we can improve our approximation by finding a multiplier  $c$  such that  $c\Lambda$  is more nearly  $\chi_d^2$ . A new approach to this problem is given in JAMES [23]. It involves the determination of the conditional distribution of the last  $q$  sample roots given the first  $k$ .

Now using the asymptotic result (3.19) the joint distribution is given by the

## THEOREM 3.2

The asymptotic distribution of the latent roots  $w_1, \dots, w_k, w_{k+1}, \dots, w_m$  depending on the non-centrality parameters  $\omega_1, \dots, \omega_k$  is

$$\begin{aligned} & f(w_1 \dots w_k, w_{k+1} \dots w_m; \omega_1, \dots, \omega_k) \bigwedge_{i=1}^m dw_i \\ &= \frac{C \exp(-\frac{1}{2} \sum_{i=1}^k \omega_i) \exp[\frac{1}{2} \sum_{i=1}^k (\omega_i w_i)]}{\prod_{1 < j}^k [(\omega_i - \omega_j)(w_i - w_j)]^{\frac{1}{2}} \prod_{i=1}^k (\omega_i w_i)^{\frac{1}{2}(n-m)}} \\ & \quad \times \exp(-\frac{1}{2} \sum w_i) \prod_{i=1}^k w_i^{\frac{1}{2}(n-m-1)} \prod_{1 < j}^k \left( \frac{w_i - w_j}{\omega_i - \omega_j} \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \bigwedge_{i=1}^k dw_i \\ & \quad \times \prod_{i=1}^k \prod_{j=k+1}^m \left[ \frac{w_i - w_j}{\omega_i} \right]^{\frac{1}{2}} \end{aligned}$$

$$\times \exp\left(-\frac{1}{2} \sum_{i=k+1}^m w_i\right) \prod_{i=k+1}^m w_i^{\frac{1}{2}(n-k-q-1)} \prod_{k < i < j \leq m} (w_i - w_j) \prod_{i=k+1}^m dw_i \quad (3.24)$$

where

$$C = \frac{\Gamma_k\left(\frac{1}{2}m\right) \Gamma_k\left(\frac{1}{2}n\right)}{2^{\frac{1}{2}qn + \frac{1}{2}k(k+2)} \pi^{\frac{1}{2}k(m+1) - \frac{1}{2}m^2} \Gamma_m\left(\frac{1}{2}n\right) \Gamma_m\left(\frac{1}{2}m\right)} .$$

As in [23] there are two very useful corollaries.

#### COROLLARY 1

The first  $k$  sample roots are asymptotically sufficient for the population roots  $\omega_1, \dots, \omega_k$ .

#### COROLLARY 2

The conditional distribution of the last roots  $w_{k+1}, \dots, w_m$ , given the first  $k$ , is

$$\begin{aligned} f_k &= f(w_{k+1}, \dots, w_m \mid w_1, \dots, w_k; \omega_1, \dots, \omega_k) \\ &= \text{const.} \prod_{i=1}^k \prod_{j=k+1}^m (w_i - w_j)^{\frac{1}{2}} \end{aligned}$$

$$\exp\left(-\frac{1}{2} \sum_{j=k+1}^m w_j\right) \prod_{i=k+1}^m w_i^{\frac{1}{2}(n-k-q-1)} \prod_{k < i < j \leq m} (w_i - w_j) \prod_{i=k+1}^m dw_i \quad (3.25)$$

and this does not depend on the population parameters  $\omega_1, \dots, \omega_k$ .

The last line of (3.25) is essentially the null distribution of  $w_{k+1}, \dots, w_m$  on  $n-k$  degrees of freedom. One degree is lost for each variable conditioned on. The test of rank can now be made using this conditional distribution.

If  $k$  were zero, then the distribution of the likelihood ratio statistic  $\Lambda$  would be derived from the distribution in the second line of (3.25). The result is

$$\chi_d^2 = \Lambda \quad (3.26)$$

where

$$d = qn. \quad (3.27)$$

In testing the last  $q$  roots when  $k \neq 0$ , as a first approximation one could ignore the factor involving  $w_1, \dots, w_k$  if these were large. In this case (3.26) would be correct as a first approximation but in (3.27)  $n$  is replaced by  $(n-k)$  and we have

$$d = q(n-k). \quad (3.28)$$

(Of course (3.27) could be written  $q(n-k)$  as  $k=0$  in that case.)

By considering the factor involving  $w_1, \dots, w_k$  we obtain the refinement of the form  $c\Lambda$ , which is more nearly  $\chi_d^2$ . Expanding the product, with  $w_k \gg w_{k+1}, \dots, w_m$

$$\begin{aligned} & \prod_{i=1}^k \prod_{j=k+1}^m (w_i - w_j)^{\frac{1}{2}} \\ &= \prod_{i=1}^k \left( w_i^{\frac{1}{2}q} \prod_{j=k+1}^m \left( 1 - \frac{w_j}{w_i} \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \right) \\ &= \prod_{i=1}^k \left( w_i^{\frac{1}{2}q} \prod_{j=k+1}^m \left( 1 - \frac{1}{2} \frac{w_j}{w_i} + o\left(\frac{1}{w_i}\right) \right) \right) \\ &= \prod_{i=1}^k w_i^{\frac{1}{2}q} \prod_{i=1}^k \left( 1 - \frac{\Lambda}{2w_i} + o\left(\frac{1}{w_i}\right) \right) \\ &= \left( 1 - \frac{\Lambda}{2} \sum_{i=1}^k \frac{1}{w_i} + o\left(\frac{1}{w}\right) \right) \prod_{i=1}^k w_i^{\frac{1}{2}q}. \end{aligned} \quad (3.29)$$



Using (3.29) the distribution (3.25) is approximated as

$$f_k = \text{const.} \left( 1 - \frac{1}{2} \Lambda \Sigma \frac{1}{w_1} + o\left(\frac{1}{w}\right) \right) \prod_{i=1}^k w_i^{\frac{1}{2}q}. \text{ null distribution} \quad (3.30)$$

where the null distribution is given by

$$\text{const.} \exp\left(-\frac{1}{2} \sum_{i=k+1}^m w_i\right) \prod_{i=k+1}^m w_i^{\frac{1}{2}(n-k-q-1)} \prod_{k < i < j \leq m} (w_i - w_j) \prod_{i=k+1}^m dw_i. \quad (3.31)$$

Define the following notation for expectation.

$E_0$  = expectation with respect to the null distribution (3.31)

$E_1$  = expectation with respect to the modified distribution (3.30).

To a first approximation, by (3.26) and (3.28)

$$E_0[\Lambda] = d = q(n-k) \quad (3.32a)$$

$$E_0[\Lambda^2] = d(d+2). \quad (3.32b)$$

To find the constant of (3.30) we have

$$\begin{aligned} 1 = E_1[1] &= E_0 \left[ \text{const.} \left( 1 - \frac{1}{2} \Lambda \Sigma \frac{1}{w_1} + o\left(\frac{1}{w}\right) \right) \prod_{i=1}^k w_i^{\frac{1}{2}q} \right] \\ &= \text{const.} \left( 1 - \frac{1}{2} d \Sigma \frac{1}{w_1} + o\left(\frac{1}{w}\right) \right) \prod_{i=1}^k w_i^{\frac{1}{2}q} \end{aligned}$$

and the modified distribution takes the form

$$f_k = \frac{\left( 1 - \frac{1}{2} \Lambda \Sigma \frac{1}{w_1} + o\left(\frac{1}{w}\right) \right)}{\left( 1 - \frac{1}{2} d \Sigma \frac{1}{w_1} + o\left(\frac{1}{w}\right) \right)} \cdot \text{null distribution.} \quad (3.33)$$

The improved multiplier  $c$  comes from

$$\begin{aligned}
E_1[\Lambda] &= \frac{E_0[\Lambda - \frac{1}{2}\Lambda^2\Sigma \frac{1}{w_1} + o(\frac{1}{w})]}{1 - \frac{1}{2}d\Sigma \frac{1}{w_1} + o(\frac{1}{w})} \\
&= [d - \frac{1}{2}d(d+2)\Sigma \frac{1}{w_1} + o(\frac{1}{w})][1 - \frac{1}{2}d\Sigma \frac{1}{w_1} + o(\frac{1}{w})]^{-1} \\
&= d[1 - \sum_{i=1}^k \frac{1}{w_i} + o(\frac{1}{w})].
\end{aligned}$$

Thus to order  $w^{-1}$  we have

$$\left(1 + \sum_{i=1}^k \frac{1}{w_i}\right)\Lambda = \chi_d^2 \quad (3.35)$$

and the results of this section are summarised as

### THEOREM 3.3

The statistic

$$\left(1 + \sum_{i=1}^k \frac{1}{w_i}\right) \sum_{i=k+1}^m w_i \quad (3.36)$$

is an improved statistic and is asymptotically distributed as  $\chi_d^2$ .

### 3.6 Connections with MANOVA and canonical correlations

This problem of rank, or number of non-zero non-centralities, is now shown to be allied to the general MANOVA situation. The results (3.21), (3.22), (3.23), (3.26), (3.27) and (3.28) of the previous section can all be derived as limiting cases.

Let  $X_{m \times n}$ ,  $Y_{m \times t}$  be sample matrices on  $n, t$  degrees of freedom respectively with the columns all normally and independently distributed with common covariance matrix  $\Sigma$ . Also  $E[X] = M$ ,  $E[Y] = 0$ .

Thus the likelihood ratio statistic to test  $H_0: M=0$  against  $H_1: M$  arbitrary is

$$\lambda = \left[ \frac{\det YY'}{\det(XX' + YY')} \right]^{\frac{1}{2}(n+t)} = \prod_{i=1}^m (1-r_i)^{\frac{1}{2}(n+t)} \quad (3.37)$$

where the  $r_i$  are the latent roots of

$$\det[XX' - r(XX' + YY')] = 0. \quad (3.38)$$

Asymptotically

$$-2 \ln \lambda = -(n+t) \sum_{i=1}^m \ln(1-r_i) \sim \chi_{mn}^2. \quad (3.39)$$

The test was proposed by BARTLETT [5] and by considering the expectation of  $-2 \ln \lambda$  he derived an improved approximation. Allowing for the notational changes  $n \rightarrow n+t$ ,  $q \rightarrow m$ ,  $p \rightarrow n$ , this has the form

$$-\left[t - \frac{1}{2}(m-n+1)\right] \sum_{i=1}^m \ln(1-r_i) \sim \chi_{mn}^2. \quad (3.40)$$

BARTLETT [4], [5] also proposed that in order to test that  $M$  has rank  $k$ , the statistic to use is

$$-\left[t - \frac{1}{2}(q-n+1)\right] \sum_{i=k+1}^m \ln(1-r_i) \quad (3.41)$$

which is asymptotically  $\chi^2$  on  $q(n-k)$  degrees of freedom.

In [26], LAWLEY considers a further adjustment term.

Let the  $f_i$  be solutions of

$$\det(\mathbf{XX}' - \mathbf{fYY}') = 0. \quad (3.42)$$

If the  $f_i$  estimate population parameters  $\beta_i^2$  then the approximation is  $(1 - r_i = (1 + f_i)^{-1})$

$$\left[ t - \frac{1}{2}(q-n+1) + \sum_{i=1}^k \frac{1}{f_i} \right] \sum_{j=k+1}^m \ln(1+f_j) \sim \chi_d^2 \quad (3.43)$$

where  $d = (m-k)(n-k)$ .

Now it was shown in section 1.2 that the non-central means with known covariance distribution can be obtained as a limit from the general non-central means distribution with the substitutions

$$w_i = \frac{r_i t}{1 - r_i} \quad \text{i.e.} \quad r_i = \frac{w_i}{w_i + t}$$

and then letting  $t \rightarrow \infty$ . Take the right hand side of (3.37), substitute for  $r_i$  and let  $t \rightarrow \infty$  to give

$$\lambda = \prod_{i=1}^m (1 + t^{-1}w_i)^{-\frac{1}{2}(n+t)}$$

$$\xrightarrow{t \rightarrow \infty} \exp\left(-\frac{1}{2} \sum_{i=1}^m w_i\right) = \text{etr}\left(-\frac{1}{2}W\right)$$

which is the result (3.21).

Similarly substitution for  $r_i$  in (3.39) and (3.40) and letting  $t \rightarrow \infty$  gives (3.22) while the limiting process applied to (3.41) yields (3.23). Under this limiting process the asymptotic distribution of  $-2 \log \lambda$  is still a  $\chi^2$  on the appropriate number of degrees of freedom, thus yielding (3.26), (3.27) and (3.28).

Also if we substitute  $tf_i = w_i$  then as  $t \rightarrow \infty$

(3.42) becomes  $\det(\mathbf{X}\mathbf{X}' - \mathbf{w}\Sigma) = 0$  and (3.43) becomes

$$\left[1 - \frac{q-n+1}{2t} + \sum_{i=1}^k \frac{1}{w_i}\right] \ln \prod_{i=k+1}^m \left(1 + \frac{w_i}{t}\right)^t$$

$$\xrightarrow{t \rightarrow \infty} \left(1 + \sum_{i=1}^k \frac{1}{w_i}\right) \sum_{i=k+1}^m w_i$$

which is precisely (3.36).

One final link is with the canonical correlations distribution. As was shown in section 1.2 the general canonical correlations distribution tends to the non-central means with known covariance distribution under the substitutions  $w_i = tr_i^2$ ,  $\omega_i = t\rho_i^2$  and taking the limit as  $t \rightarrow \infty$ .

To test the hypothesis  $\rho_{k+1} = \dots = \rho_m = 0$

BARTLETT [4] proposed the statistic ( $n \rightarrow t$ ,  $p \rightarrow m$ ,  $q \rightarrow n$ ,  $s \rightarrow k$ )

$$\chi^2 = -\left[t - \frac{1}{2}(m+n+1)\right] \log \prod_{i=k+1}^m (1-r_i^2) \quad (3.44)$$

where  $\chi^2$  has  $(m-k)(n-k)$  degrees of freedom. The multiplier was modified by LAWLEY [26] to give an improved approximation. Quoting equation (8) ( $n \rightarrow t$ ,  $p \rightarrow m$ ,  $q \rightarrow n$ ) this improved multiplier takes the form

$$t - k - \frac{1}{2}(m+n+1) + \sum_{i=1}^k \frac{1}{r_i^2} \cdot \quad (3.45)$$

Substituting this in (3.44), putting  $r_i^2 = t^{-1}w_i$  and letting  $t \rightarrow \infty$  gives (3.36).

CHAPTER 4

THE BESSEL FUNCTION OF ONE ARGUMENT

4.1 Introduction

Here we apply the reduction process of Chapter 2 to the Bessel function  ${}_0F_1(\frac{1}{2}n; \frac{1}{4}XX')$  and obtain an asymptotic expansion valid for those  $X$  such that  $XX'$  has large latent roots. The result is easier to obtain than (2.58) and is made even easier by borrowing freely the results of Chapter 2.

ANDERSON'S integral, in the case  $m=k$ , is derived as a stage in the process and in section 7 we see how (2.11) can be obtained by averaging (4.4).

Statistically the Bessel function of one argument matrix appears as part of the likelihood factor of the non-central Wishart distribution.

Direct substitution for  $H$  in (4.1) again leads to obviously wrong results so some preliminary integrations are in order before setting  $H = \exp(S)$ .

4.2 ANDERSON'S integral

Directly from JAMES [21] comes the integral

$${}_0F_1(\frac{1}{2}n; \frac{1}{4}XX') = k_1 \int_{\mathcal{V}(n)} \text{etr}(XH_1) (dH) \quad (4.1)$$

and using (2.9), with  $H_1 \in \mathcal{V}_{nm}$

$${}_0F_1\left(\frac{1}{2}n; \frac{1}{t}XX'\right) = k_2 \int_{\mathcal{V}_{nm}} \text{etr}(XH_1) (dH_1) \quad (4.2)$$

where  $k_1 = [\text{Vol}(\mathcal{O}(n))]^{-1}$ ,  $k_2 = [\text{Vol}(\mathcal{V}_{nm})]^{-1}$  and  $H = [H_1 \ H_2] \in \mathcal{O}(n)$ .

Again this can be shown to be a function of the latent roots of  $XX'$  only. Diagonalise  $X$  by the transformation of LEMMA 2.1. Set  $X = D[A \ 0]E$  with  $D \in \mathcal{O}(m)$ ,  $E \in \mathcal{O}(n)$ ,  $A = \text{diag}(a_1)$  and the  $a_1^2$  are the latent roots of  $\det(XX' - a^2I) = 0$  with  $a_1^2 > \dots > a_m^2 > 0$ . Substituting in the integrand of (4.2) gives

$$\text{etr}(XH_1) = \text{etr}([A \ 0]EH_1D)$$

and it is clear that  $EH_1D \in \mathcal{V}_{nm}$ . Change variables to  $K_1 = EH_1D$  and since  $E, D$  are constant matrices  $(dK_1) = (dH_1)$ . Hence (4.2) becomes

$${}_0F_1\left(\frac{1}{2}n; \frac{1}{t}XX'\right) = k_2 \int_{\mathcal{V}_{nm}} \text{etr}([A \ 0]K_1) (dK_1). \quad (4.3)$$

Applying the Stiefel manifold transformation of HERZ,

$$K_1 = \begin{bmatrix} K_{11} \\ K_{21} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} T \\ U(I_m - T'T)^{\frac{1}{2}} \end{bmatrix}$$

where  $T$  is an  $m \times m$  real matrix with  $T'T \leq I$ ,  $U \in \mathcal{V}_{n-m, m}$  and there is now the added restriction of  $n \geq 2m$ . For the measures  $(dK_1) = \det(I - T'T)^{\frac{1}{2}(n-2m-1)} (dT) (dU)$  and for the

integrand of (4.3)

$$\text{etr}\left(\begin{bmatrix} A & 0 \\ & K_{21} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} K_{11} \\ K_{21} \end{bmatrix}\right) = \text{etr}(AK_{11}) = \text{etr}(AT).$$

So (4.3) becomes, on integrating (dU) over  $\mathcal{V}_{n-m,m}$

$${}_0F_1\left(\frac{1}{2}n; \frac{1}{2}XX'\right) = k_3 \int_{T'T \leq I} \text{etr}(AT) \det(I-T'T)^{\frac{1}{2}(n-2m-1)} (dT) \quad (4.4)$$

where

$$k_3 = \frac{\text{Vol}(\mathcal{V}_{n-m,m})}{\text{Vol}(\mathcal{V}_{nm})} = \frac{\Gamma_m(\frac{1}{2}n)}{\pi^{\frac{1}{2}m^2} \Gamma_m(\frac{1}{2}(n-m))}.$$

Equation (4.4) is ANDERSON'S integral for the case when the matrix  $X$   $m \times n$  is of rank  $m$ . For  $m=1$  this reduces to the POISSON integral (1.30).

The integration over  $T'T \leq I$  must be reduced to one over  $\mathcal{O}(m)$ . Let  $T = HS$  where  $H \in \mathcal{O}(m)$  and  $S$  an  $m \times m$  symmetric positive definite matrix. From (2.14)

$$(dT) = (dH) \prod_{1 < j} (d_1 + d_j) (dS) \quad (4.5)$$

where  $d_1, \dots, d_m$  are the latent roots of  $S$ , and (4.4)

becomes

$$\begin{aligned} {}_0F_1\left(\frac{1}{2}n; \frac{1}{2}XX'\right) &= k_3 \int_{\mathcal{O}(m)} (dH) \int_{S \leq I} (dS) \text{etr}(AHS) \\ &\times \det(I-S^2)^{\frac{1}{2}(n-2m-1)} \prod_{1 < j} (d_1 + d_j). \end{aligned} \quad (4.6)$$

The three steps of the classical approximation are now applied. Transform  $U = I-S$ ,  $U$  has latent roots



$u_1 = 1 - d_1$  and (4.6) becomes

$${}_0F_1\left(\frac{1}{2}n; \frac{1}{2}XX'\right) = k_4 \int_{\mathcal{O}(m)} (dH) \text{etr}(AH) \quad (4.7a)$$

$$\int_{U \leq I} (dU) \text{etr}(-AHU) [\det U(I - \frac{1}{2}U)]^{\frac{1}{2}(n-2m-1)} \prod_{1 < j} \left(1 - \frac{u_1 + u_j}{2}\right) \quad (4.7b)$$

with  $k_4 = 2^{\frac{1}{2}m(n-m-2)} k_3$ . Expand binomially to obtain the series (2.17). Apply THEOREM 2.1 term by term to (4.7b) with the series substituted and the range of integration extended to  $U > 0$ , since the latent roots of  $A$  are assumed large. This gives, with  $R=AH$ ,  $R^{-1}=H'A^{-1}$

$${}_0F_1\left(\frac{1}{2}n; \frac{1}{2}XX'\right) \simeq k_5 \det A^{-\frac{1}{2}(n-m)}$$

$$\int_{\mathcal{O}(m)} \text{etr}(AH) \left(1 + \sum_{\kappa} d_{\kappa} C_{\kappa}(R^{-1})\right) (dH) \quad (4.8)$$

with  $d_{\kappa}$  as in (2.20) and  $k_5 = \frac{2^{\frac{1}{2}m(n-m-2)} \Gamma_m(\frac{1}{2}n)}{\pi^{\frac{1}{2}m^2}}$ .

### 4.3 Finding the maxima

Now (4.8) can be split into integrals over the disjoint subsets  $\mathcal{O}^+(m)$  and  $\mathcal{O}^-(m)$ . Making use of the device  $H^+ = JH$  of Chapter 2, we get

$$\int_{\mathcal{O}(m)} f(H;A) (dH) = \int_{\mathcal{O}^+(m)} f(H;A) (dH) + \int_{\mathcal{O}^+(m)} f(H;A^*) (dH) \quad (4.9)$$

where  $f$  stands for the integrand of (4.8) and

$$A^* = \text{diag}(a_1 \dots a_{m-1}, -a_m).$$

To find the stationary points of  $\text{tr}(AH)$  over  $\mathcal{O}^+(m)$  we have, taking differentials and equating to zero,

$$d \text{tr}(AH) = \text{tr}(AH(H' dH)) = 0. \quad (4.10)$$

Using LEMMA 2.2, (4.10) implies that  $AH$  is symmetric.

Thus  $AH = H'A$ , or element by element  $a_i h_{ij} = h_{ji} a_j$ . For  $i = 1$ ,

$$h_{1j} = \frac{a_j}{a_1} h_{j1} \quad j = 2, \dots, m. \quad (4.11)$$

Since the rows and columns of  $H$  are normalised

$$h_{11}^2 + \sum_{j=2}^m h_{1j}^2 = h_{11}^2 + \sum_{j=2}^m \left(\frac{a_j}{a_1}\right)^2 h_{j1}^2 = 1$$

$$h_{11}^2 + \sum_{j=2}^m h_{j1}^2 = 1.$$

By assumption  $a_j < a_1$ ,  $j = 2, \dots, m$  and the above are contradictory unless  $h_{j1} = 0$ ,  $j = 2, \dots, m$ . From (4.11)  $h_{1j} = 0$ ,  $j = 2, \dots, m$ . Thus we can write

$$H = \begin{bmatrix} \pm 1 & 0' \\ 0 & H_1 \end{bmatrix}$$

where  $H_1 \in \mathcal{O}(m-1)$ , and by repeating the argument on  $H_1$ ,

$$H = \begin{bmatrix} \pm 1 & & & \\ & \cdot & & \\ & & \cdot & \\ & & & \cdot \\ & & & & \pm 1 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Hence for  $\text{tr}(AH)$  the maximum is  $\text{tr}(A)$  at  $H = I$

and for  $\text{tr}(A^*H)$  the maximum is  $\text{tr}(A^*)$  at  $H = I$ .

Unlike the Bessel function of two argument matrices,

we have a unique maximum for  $\text{tr}(AH)$  over  $H \in \mathcal{O}^+(m)$  and a unique maximum for  $\text{tr}(A^*H)$  similarly, rather than the  $2^m$  equal maxima over each subset as before. However we argue as before that for large values of  $A$  and  $A^*$  the integrands on the right hand side of (4.9) are large only in the neighbourhood of the maximum of  $\text{tr}(AH)$  and  $\text{tr}(A^*H)$  respectively. Thus (4.9) approximates to

$$\int_{\mathcal{O}(m)} f(H;A) (dH) \simeq \int_{N(I)} f(H;A) (dH) + \int_{N(I)} f(H;A^*) (dH). \quad (4.12)$$

#### 4.4 Approximating the integral

We concentrate on

$$g(A) = \int_{N(I)} f(H;A) (dH) \quad (4.13)$$

but the same procedures may be applied to  $g(A^*)$ .

Now  $N(I)$  contains only  $H \in \mathcal{O}^+(m)$  so apply the parameterisation  $H = \exp(S)$  where  $S$  is an  $m \times m$  skew symmetric matrix. Let  $H = (h_{ij})$ ,  $S = (s_{ij})$ , then

$$h_{ii} = 1 - \frac{1}{2} \sum_{j=1}^m s_{ij}^2 + o(s^2) \quad i = 1, \dots, m$$

$$h_{ij} = s_{ij} + o(s) \quad i \neq j.$$

Also  $N(I) \rightarrow N(S=0)$  and  $(dH) = J(S) \prod_{i < j} ds_{ij}$  where  $J(S)$  is given by (2.37).

Substituting for  $H$  in  $f(H;A) = \text{etr}(AH)(1+F(H;A))$ .

First

$$\begin{aligned} \text{tr}(AH) &= \sum_{i=1}^m a_i h_{11} = \sum_{i=1}^m a_i - \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i,j} a_i s_{ij}^2 + o(s^2) \\ &= \text{tr}(A) - \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i < j} (a_i + a_j) s_{ij}^2 + o(s^2). \end{aligned} \quad (4.14)$$

Thus

$$g(A) \simeq \text{etr}(A) \int_{N(S=0)} \exp\left(-\frac{1}{2} \sum_{i < j} d_{ij} s_{ij}^2\right) (1 + \varphi(S; A)) J(S) \prod_{i < j} ds_{ij} \quad (4.15)$$

where  $d_{ij} = a_i + a_j$ .

For large values of  $a_i$  the major contribution to the integral (4.15) comes from integrating over values of  $s_{ij}$  near the origin so the range of integration can be extended from  $N(S=0)$  to  $\bigcup_{i < j} \{s_{ij} : -\infty < s_{ij} < \infty\}$ . Furthermore let  $A^{-1} = \text{diag}(a_i^{-1}) = \text{diag}(\alpha_i)$ ,  $R^{-1} = (\rho_{ij})$  and

$$F(H; A) = e_1 a_1^* + e_2 a_1^{*2} + e_3 a_2^* + o(r^{-2}) \quad (4.16)$$

with the  $a_i^*$  the elementary symmetric functions of the latent roots of  $R^{-1}$ .

Firstly

$$\begin{aligned} a_1^* &= \text{tr}(H'A^{-1}) = \sum_{i=1}^m \alpha_i h_{11} \\ &= \sum \alpha_i - \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i < j} (\alpha_i + \alpha_j) s_{ij}^2 + o(s^2) \end{aligned} \quad (4.17)$$

and secondly  $a_1^{*2}$  is easily found, while since  $\rho_{ij} = \alpha_j h_{ji}$

$$\begin{aligned}
 a_2^* &= \sum_{1 < j} (\rho_{11} \rho_{jj} - \rho_{1j} \rho_{j1}) \\
 &= \sum_{1 < j} \alpha_1 \alpha_j + \sum_{1 < j} \alpha_1 \alpha_j s_{1j}^2 - \frac{1}{2} \sum_{1 < j} \alpha_1 \alpha_j \sum_{k=1}^m (s_{1k}^2 + s_{jk}^2) + o(s^2).
 \end{aligned}$$

Substituting in  $F(H;A)$  gives  $\varphi(S;A)$  and it is easily seen that all terms derived from (4.15) are evaluable using

$$\begin{aligned}
 \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \exp(-\frac{1}{2}ds^2) ds &= \left[ \frac{2\pi}{d} \right]^{\frac{1}{2}} \\
 \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} s^{2r} \exp(-\frac{1}{2}ds^2) ds &= \left[ \frac{2\pi}{d} \right]^{\frac{1}{2}} \frac{1 \cdot 3 \dots (2r-1)}{d^r} \quad r = 1, 2, \dots
 \end{aligned}$$

and the integral of an odd power of  $s$  gives zero.

Substitution and integration of all terms from (4.15) gives

$$g(A) = \frac{(2\pi)^{\frac{1}{2}m(m-1)} \text{etr}(A)}{\prod_{1 < j} d_{1j}^{\frac{1}{2}}} G(A) \quad (4.18)$$

and stopping at terms of second degree in  $\frac{1}{a_1}$

$$\begin{aligned}
 G(A) &= 1 - \frac{1}{8}(n-3)(n-m) \sum \frac{1}{a_1} - \frac{1}{12}(m-2) \sum_{1 < j} \frac{1}{a_1 + a_j} \\
 &+ \frac{1}{128}(n-3)(n-5)(n-m)(n-m+2) \sum \frac{1}{a_1^2} \\
 &+ \frac{1}{128}(n-m)(n^3 - n^2m + 2n^2 + 8m^2 - 10nm + 23n - 5m - 2) \sum_{1 < j} \frac{1}{a_1 a_j} \\
 &+ \frac{1}{128}(n-3)(n-m)(m-2) \sum_{1 < j} \sum_{k=1}^m \frac{1}{a_k(a_1 + a_j)} \\
 &+ \frac{(m-2)(5m-11)}{2 \cdot 6!} \sum_{1 < j} \frac{3}{(a_1 + a_j)^2} + \frac{5m^2 - 23m + 38}{6!} \sum_{1 < j} \sum_{\substack{1 < k \\ j < k}} \frac{1}{(a_1 + a_j)(a_1 + a_k)} \\
 &+ \frac{5m^2 - 20m + 14}{8 \cdot 6!} \sum_{1 < j} \sum_{\substack{k < l \\ 1 < k}} \frac{1}{(a_1 + a_j)(a_k + a_l)} + o\left(\frac{1}{a^2}\right). \quad (4.19)
 \end{aligned}$$

#### 4.5 Proving the approximation

Using HSU'S LEMMA we can show that (4.18) is an asymptotic expansion for the integral (4.13) for large values of  $A$ .

##### THEOREM 4.1

Let  $A = \text{diag}(a_1)$  be  $m \times m$  with  $a_1 > a_2 > \dots > a_m > 0$ . Then for  $A$  large and  $g(A)$  defined as in (4.13)

$$g(A) \sim \frac{(2\pi)^{\frac{1}{2}m(m-1)} \text{etr}(A)}{\prod_{1 < j} (a_1 + a_j)^{\frac{1}{2}}} . \quad (4.20)$$

##### Proof

The proof follows the lines of that for THEOREM 2.3. Set  $A = a_1 X$ ,  $x_1 = a_1^{-1} a_1$ ,  $\text{etr}(AH) = [\text{etr}(XH)]^{a_1}$  etc... Q.E.D.

Again it is easy to show that

$$g(A^*) = O(\exp(-2a_m)g(A))$$

indicating the relative unimportance of the second term.

#### 4.6 Summary

From (4.8) and (4.13)

$${}_0F_1\left(\frac{1}{2}n; \frac{1}{2}XX'\right) \simeq k_5 \det A^{-\frac{1}{2}(n-m)} [g(A) + g(A^*)]. \quad (4.21)$$

The results may be summarised in the

##### THEOREM 4.2

Let the matrix  $XX'$  have latent roots  $a_i^2$ . Then for large values of the  $a_i^2$  the Bessel function has the asymptotic representation

$${}_0F_1\left(\frac{1}{2}n; \frac{1}{2}XX'\right) = \frac{k \operatorname{etr}(A)}{\prod_{1 \leq j} (a_i + a_j)^{\frac{1}{2}} \det A^{\frac{1}{2}(n-m)}} G(A) \quad (4.22)$$

where  $G(A)$  is given by (4.19) and  $k = \frac{2^{\frac{1}{2}m(2n-m-5)} \Gamma_m(\frac{1}{2}n)}{\pi^{\frac{1}{2}m(m+1)}}.$

Setting  $m=1$  this reduces to

$${}_0F_1\left(\frac{1}{2}n; \frac{1}{2}x^2\right) = \frac{2^{\frac{1}{2}(n-3)} e^x}{\sqrt{\pi} x^{\frac{1}{2}(n-1)}} \left( 1 - \frac{(n-1)(n-3)}{8x} + \frac{(n+1)(n-1)(n-3)(n-5)}{128x^2} \dots \right)$$

which agrees with the first few terms of (1.31).

Again numerical evaluations are left for Chapter 8.

#### 4.7 The averaged ANDERSON'S Integral.

The integral (2.11) can be deduced directly from (4.4) by averaging over the orthogonal group. Take the left hand side of (2.11)

$${}_0F_1^{(m)}\left(\frac{1}{2}n; \frac{1}{2}A^2, B^2\right) = c_1 \int_{\mathcal{O}(m)} {}_0F_1\left(\frac{1}{2}n; \frac{1}{2}A^2 H B^2 H'\right) (dH) \quad (4.23)$$

where  $c_1 = [\operatorname{Vol}(\mathcal{O}(m))]^{-1}$ . The argument  $A^2 H B^2 H'$  has the same latent roots as  $BH'A(BH'A)'$  so (4.23) becomes

$${}_0F_1^{(m)}\left(\frac{1}{2}n; \frac{1}{2}A^2, B^2\right) = c_1 \int_{\mathcal{O}(m)} {}_0F_1\left(\frac{1}{2}n; \frac{1}{2}BH'A(BH'A)'\right) (dH)$$

$$\stackrel{(4.4)}{=} c_2 \int_{\mathcal{O}(m)} \int_{R'R \leq I} \operatorname{etr}(BH'AR) \det(I-R'R)^{\frac{1}{2}(n-2m-1)} (dR) (dH)$$

where  $c_2 = \frac{\Gamma_m(\frac{1}{2}m) \Gamma_m(\frac{1}{2}n)}{2^m \pi^{m^2} \Gamma_m(\frac{1}{2}(n-m))}$ . Making the substitution

$T'=R$  and using the fact that  $\operatorname{tr}(XY) = \operatorname{tr}(X'Y')$  with  $X = BH'A, Y=T'$  gives (2.11).

CHAPTER 5

THE P.D.E. ASYMPTOTIC FORMULA FOR  ${}_0F_1$

5.1 Introduction

The result of Chapter 4 for the Bessel function of one matrix argument was given in terms of inverse powers of the latent roots and was asymptotic on these becoming large. In this Chapter we consider an asymptotic expansion for  ${}_0F_1(\frac{1}{2}n; R)$  ( $R$   $m \times m$  symmetric) where the series is given in powers of  $n^{-1}$  on the condition that the matrix  $R$  depends on  $n$ .

The asymptotic expansion is derived using a system of partial differential equations given by MUIRHEAD [27]. The system is a generalisation of that given by JAMES [17] for  ${}_0F_1(\frac{1}{2}m; R)$  and many of the results used in section 2 are taken from that paper.

Finally the expansion is related to the  ${}_0F_1$  appearing in the likelihood factor of the non-central Wishart distribution.

5.2 Using the differential equations

Let  $R$  be an  $m \times m$  complex symmetric matrix with latent roots  $R_1, R_2, \dots, R_m$ . Then from MUIRHEAD [27]

THEOREM 5.1

The function  ${}_0F_1(\frac{1}{2}n; R)$  is the unique solution of each of the  $m$  differential equations



$$R_1 \frac{\partial^2 F}{\partial R_1^2} + \left\{ \frac{1}{2}n - \frac{1}{2}(m-1) + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{j \neq 1} \frac{R_1}{R_1 - R_j} \right\} \frac{\partial F}{\partial R_1} - \frac{1}{2} \sum_{j \neq 1} \frac{R_1}{R_1 - R_j} \frac{\partial F}{\partial R_j} = F$$

$$i = 1, 2, \dots, m \quad (5.1)$$

subject to the conditions that

- (a)  $F$  is symmetric in  $R_1, R_2, \dots, R_m$ , and
- (b)  $F$  is analytic about  $R=0$  and  $F(0)=1$ .

In statistical applications the matrix  $R$  is restricted to being positive semi-definite. That is all  $R_i \geq 0$ ,  $i = 1, 2, \dots, m$ . However for the expansion an even more restrictive condition is needed. Let  $R$  have the form

$$R = nS \quad \text{for each } n, \quad (5.2)$$

where  $S$  is a fixed  $m \times m$  symmetric matrix.

Thus we can determine the behaviour of  ${}_0F_1$  as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ .

LEMMA 5.1

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} {}_0F_1\left(\frac{1}{2}n; R\right) = \text{etr}(2S) \quad (5.3)$$

Proof

Expand  ${}_0F_1$  in a zonal series and take limits.

Since the series is absolutely convergent, the order of the operations of summation and taking limits can be reversed.

Thus, substituting  $R=nS$

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} {}_0F_1\left(\frac{1}{2}n; R\right) = \sum_{\kappa, \kappa} \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{C_{\kappa}(nS)}{\left(\frac{1}{2}n\right)_{\kappa} k!}.$$

Now  $C_{\kappa}(nS) = n^k C_{\kappa}(S)$  and taking limits the individual terms reduce to  $C_{\kappa}(2S)/k!$ . Summation of these terms gives

the required result. Q.E.D.

First we obtain a system of PDE's in the latent roots  $S_1, S_2, \dots, S_m$  of  $S$ . Make the transformation (5.2). Then  $R_1 = nS_1$  and differentiating  $\frac{\partial F}{\partial R_1} = \frac{1}{n} \frac{\partial F}{\partial S_1}$ ,  $\frac{\partial^2 F}{\partial R_1^2} = \frac{1}{n^2} \frac{\partial^2 F}{\partial S_1^2}$ . The system (5.1) becomes

$$S_1 \frac{\partial^2 F}{\partial S_1^2} + \left\{ \frac{1}{2}n - \frac{1}{2}(m-1) + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{j \neq 1} \frac{S_1}{S_1 - S_j} \right\} \frac{\partial F}{\partial S_1} - \frac{1}{2} \sum_{j \neq 1} \frac{S_1}{S_1 - S_j} \frac{\partial F}{\partial S_j} = nF$$

$i = 1, 2, \dots, m.$  (5.4)

Now using (5.3), for large values of  $n$  the function  ${}_0F_1$  can be factorised in the form

$$F = \text{etr}(2S)G \quad (5.5)$$

and we get PDE's for  $G$ . Differentiating partially in (5.5)

$$\frac{\partial F}{\partial S_1} = \text{etr}(2S) \frac{\partial G}{\partial S_1} + 2 \text{etr}(2S)G$$

$$\frac{\partial^2 F}{\partial S_1^2} = \text{etr}(2S) \frac{\partial^2 G}{\partial S_1^2} + 4 \text{etr}(2S) \frac{\partial G}{\partial S_1} + 4 \text{etr}(2S)G.$$

Substituting in (5.4) and cancelling an  $\text{etr}(2S)$  gives the system

$$S_1 \frac{\partial^2 G}{\partial S_1^2} + \left\{ \frac{1}{2}n - \frac{1}{2}(m-1) + 4S_1 + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{j \neq 1} \frac{S_1}{S_1 - S_j} \right\} \frac{\partial G}{\partial S_1} - \frac{1}{2} \sum_{j \neq 1} \frac{S_j}{S_1 - S_j} \frac{\partial G}{\partial S_j} + 4S_1 G = 0$$

$i = 1, 2, \dots, m.$  (5.6)

By the condition (a) on the solution of (5.1),  $F$  is a symmetric function. Also  $\text{etr}(2S)$  is a symmetric function. Hence from (5.5)  $G$  is also a symmetric function. This suggests that we try a series expansion in elementary symmetric functions. That is, a solution of the form

$$G = 1 + \sum_{u=1}^{\infty} \frac{P_u(a)}{n^u} \quad (5.7)$$

where the  $P_u(a)$  are polynomials in the elementary symmetric functions  $a_1, a_2, \dots, a_m$  of the variables  $S_1, S_2, \dots, S_m$ .

JAMES [17] has shown how to transform from a PDE in the variables to a PDE in the elementary symmetric functions of them. Let  $a_j^{(1)}$  for  $j = 1, 2, \dots, m-1$  denote the  $j$ th elementary symmetric function of the variables  $S_1 \dots S_m$  omitting  $S_1$ . Introducing the dummy variables

$$a_0 = a_0^{(1)} = 1$$

$$a_j = 0 \quad j = -1, -2, \dots \text{and } m+1, m+2, \dots$$

$$a_j^{(1)} = 0 \quad j = -1, -2, \dots \text{and } m, m+1, \dots$$

we have the relationship

$$a_j = S_1 a_{j-1}^{(1)} + a_j^{(1)} \quad -\infty < j < \infty \quad (5.8)$$

$$i = 1, 2, \dots, m.$$

The partial derivative formulae are

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial S_1} = \sum_{v=1}^m a_{v-1}^{(1)} \frac{\partial}{\partial a_v}$$

$$\frac{\partial^2}{\partial S_1^2} = \sum_{v, \mu=1}^m a_{v-1}^{(1)} a_{\mu-1}^{(1)} \frac{\partial^2}{\partial a_v \partial a_\mu}.$$

On substituting for the partial derivatives and applying (5.8), (5.6) gives

$$\sum_{1 \leq \mu \leq v \leq m} (2 - \delta_{v\mu}) \left( \sum_{j=1}^{\mu} a_{\mu+v-1} a_{j-1}^{(1)} - \sum_{j=1}^{\mu} a_{\mu-j} a_{v+j-1}^{(1)} \right) \frac{\partial^2 G}{\partial a_v \partial a_\mu} \\ + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{j=1}^m (n+1-j) a_{j-1}^{(1)} \frac{\partial G}{\partial a_j} + 4 \sum_{j=1}^m (a_j - a_j^{(1)}) \frac{\partial G}{\partial a_j} = 4(a_1^{(1)} - a_1)G$$

$$i = 1, 2, \dots, m. \quad (5.9)$$

To proceed we need the following

LEMMA 5.2 ([17] p 371)

If  $S_1, S_2, \dots, S_m$  are indeterminates and  $a_1, a_2, \dots, a_m$  the elementary symmetric functions of them, and  $a_1^{(1)}, \dots, a_{m-1}^{(1)}$  the elementary symmetric functions of  $S_1 \dots S_m$  with  $S_1$  omitted and if  $\lambda_0(a), \lambda_1(a), \dots, \lambda_{m-1}(a)$  are functions of  $a_1 \dots a_m$  such that

$$\lambda_0(a) + \lambda_1(a)a_1^{(1)} + \dots + \lambda_{m-1}(a)a_{m-1}^{(1)} = 0$$

then  $\lambda_0(a) = 0, \lambda_1(a) = 0, \dots, \lambda_{m-1}(a) = 0$ .

Using the LEMMA 5.2 each of the  $m$  PDE's in (5.9) can be expanded into a system of  $m$  PDE's. Each member of (5.9) will give the same system of derived PDE's. Equating the coefficients of  $a_j^{(1)}$  to zero for  $j = 1, 2, \dots, m$  we have

$$\sum_{\nu, \mu=1}^m c_{\mu\nu}^{(j)} (S_1 \dots S_m) \frac{\partial^2 G}{\partial a_\mu \partial a_\nu} + \frac{1}{2}(n+1-j) \frac{\partial G}{\partial a_j} + 4 \sum_{\nu=1}^m a_\nu \frac{\partial G}{\partial a_\nu} \delta_{1j} + 4a_1 G \delta_{1j} = 4 \frac{\partial G}{\partial a_{j-1}} (1 - \delta_{1j}) + 4G \delta_{2j}$$

$$j = 1, 2, \dots, m \quad (5.10)$$

where  $c_{\mu\nu}^{(j)} = c_{\nu\mu}^{(j)}$  and for  $\mu \leq \nu$

$$c_{\mu\nu}^{(j)} = \begin{cases} a_{\mu+\nu-j} & 1 \leq j \leq \mu \\ 0 & \mu < j \leq \nu \\ -a_{\mu+\nu-j} & \nu < j \leq \mu + \nu \\ 0 & \mu + \nu < j \end{cases} \quad j = 1, 2, \dots, m.$$

Written more explicitly, the system of differential equations (5.10) is



Substitute for  $G$  in (5.11) using (5.7) and equate coefficients of powers of  $n^{-1}$ .

Term independent of  $n(u=0)$ .

$$j = 1: \quad \frac{1}{2} \frac{\partial P_1(a)}{\partial a_1} + 4a_1 = 0 \quad (5.12a)$$

$$j = 2: \quad \frac{1}{2} \frac{\partial P_1}{\partial a_2} = 4 \quad (5.12b)$$

$$j > 2: \quad \frac{1}{2} \frac{\partial P_1}{\partial a_j} = 0. \quad (5.12c)$$

Hence  $P_1(a)$  is a function of  $a_1$  and  $a_2$  alone and must have the form

$$P_1(a) = c_0 + c_1 a_1 + c_2 a_2 + c_3 a_1^2. \quad (5.13)$$

Condition (b) on (5.1) is needed here to provide a unique solution to the equations (5.12). If  $S=0$ , then  ${}_0F_1(\frac{1}{2}n; nS) = 1$  and hence  $G=1$ . Thus  $P_1(0)=0$  and  $c_0=0$ . Substituting (5.13) in the equations (5.12a) and (5.12b) gives the solution

$$P_1(a) = 8a_2 - 4a_1^2. \quad (5.14)$$

Next the coefficient of  $n^{-1}$ .

$$j = 1: \quad \frac{1}{2} \frac{\partial P_2}{\partial a_1} = 8a_1 + 32a_1^2 - 32a_2 - 32a_1 a_2 + 16a_1^3$$

$$j = 2: \quad \frac{1}{2} \frac{\partial P_2}{\partial a_2} = -4 - 32a_1 + 32a_2 - 16a_1^2$$

$$j = 3: \quad \frac{1}{2} \frac{\partial P_2}{\partial a_3} = 32 \quad j > 3: \quad \frac{\partial P_2}{\partial a_j} = 0.$$

Solving the system under condition (b)

$$P_2(a) = 32a_2^2 - 32a_2 a_1^2 + 8a_1^4 + 64a_3 + 64a_1 a_2 + \frac{64}{3} a_1^3 - 8a_2 + 8a_1^2. \quad (5.15)$$

By considering successively the coefficients of  $n^{-2}, n^{-3}, \dots$  the polynomials  $P_3(a), P_4(a), \dots$  can be found. The number of terms per polynomial increases sharply with  $u$

as  $P_u(a)$  is a polynomial of degree  $2u$ . Rather than evaluate further  $P_u(a)$ , we now consider a series expansion in another set of symmetric functions that gives fewer terms per polynomial.

### 5.3 The direct method

Let us consider a series of the form

$$G = 1 + \sum_{u=1}^{\infty} \frac{Q_u(r)}{n^u} \quad (5.16)$$

where the  $Q_u(r)$  are polynomials in the power sums  $r_1, r_2, \dots$  of the variables  $S_1, \dots, S_m$ . This is analogous to (5.7).

Substituting (5.16) directly into (5.6) gives

$$\begin{aligned} S_i \sum_{n^u} \frac{\partial^2 Q_u}{\partial S_i^2} + \left\{ \frac{1}{2}n - \frac{1}{2}(m-1) + 4S_i + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{j \neq i} \frac{S_j}{S_i - S_j} \right\} \sum_{n^u} \frac{\partial Q_u}{\partial S_i} \\ - \frac{1}{2} \sum_{j \neq i} \frac{S_j}{S_i - S_j} \sum_{n^u} \frac{\partial Q_u}{\partial S_j} + 4S_i \left\{ 1 + \sum_{n^u} \frac{Q_u}{n^u} \right\} = 0 \\ i = 1, 2, \dots, m. \end{aligned} \quad (5.17)$$

Term independent of  $n(u=0)$

$$\frac{1}{2} \frac{\partial Q_1}{\partial S_i} + 4S_i = 0 \quad i = 1, 2, \dots, m.$$

Solving

$$Q_1(r) = -4S_i^2 + \text{similar terms } i = 1, \dots, m.$$

Combining all  $m$  results and expressing the solution in terms of power sums

$$Q_1(r) = -4r_2. \quad (5.18)$$

The coefficient of  $\frac{1}{n}$ ,

$$\frac{\partial Q_2}{\partial S_i} = 16S_i + 8 \sum_{j \neq i} S_j + 32S_i r_2 + 64S_i^2 \quad i = 1, \dots, m.$$

Integrating

$$Q_2(r) = 8S_1^2 + 8 \sum_{j \neq 1} S_1 S_j + 8S_1^4 + 16S_1^2 \sum_{j \neq 1} S_j^2 + \frac{64}{3} S_1^3 \quad (5.19)$$

+ similar terms.

Combining all  $m$  results

$$Q_2(r) = 8r_2 + 8 \sum_{1 < j} S_1 S_j + 8r_4 + 16 \sum_{1 < j} S_1^2 S_j^2 + \frac{64}{3} r_3. \quad (5.20)$$

It is easily seen that

$$r_1^2 = r_2 + 2 \sum_{1 < j} S_1 S_j$$

$$r_2^2 = r_4 + 2 \sum_{1 < j} S_1^2 S_j^2$$

and substitution in (5.20) gives the answer in power sums as

$$Q_2(r) = 8r_2^2 + \frac{64}{3} r_3 + 4r_2 + 4r_1^2. \quad (5.21)$$

For general  $u$ , the  $m$  equations have the form

$$\frac{\partial Q_{u+1}}{\partial S_1} = -2S_1 \frac{\partial^2 Q_u}{\partial S_1^2} + (m-1) \frac{\partial Q_u}{\partial S_1} - 8S_1 \frac{\partial Q_u}{\partial S_1} - 8S_1 Q_u$$

$$- \sum_{j \neq i} \frac{S_1 \frac{\partial Q_u}{\partial S_1} - S_j \frac{\partial Q_u}{\partial S_j}}{S_1 - S_j}$$

$i = 1, \dots, m. \quad (5.22)$

#### 5.4 The two methods, a comparison

From JAMES [21] comes a table of zonal polynomials in terms of power sums and elementary symmetric functions. By equating the two

$$\begin{aligned} a_1 &= r_1 \\ 2a_2 &= r_1^2 - r_2 \\ 6a_3 &= r_1^3 - 3r_1 r_2 + 2r_3. \end{aligned}$$



Substitution in  $P_1$  and  $P_2$  shows that

$$P_u(a) = P_u(a(r)) = Q_u(r) \quad u = 1, 2 \quad (5.23)$$

but  $Q_1$  and  $Q_2$  only involve half as many terms as  $P_1$  and  $P_2$ . From this it is inferred that in general  $Q_u$  will contain less terms than  $P_u$  but one can be converted into the other if necessary.

The method of Section 3 is more direct as no change of variables is required in the PDE(5.6) before substituting (5.16). On the negative side the main disadvantages appear to be the evaluation of the term

$$\sum_{j \neq i} \frac{S_i \frac{\partial Q_u}{\partial S_i} - S_j \frac{\partial Q_u}{\partial S_j}}{S_i - S_j} \quad (5.24)$$

and the combination of  $m$  results like (5.19) into the polynomial (5.20) where the method is one of trial and error. The solution of (5.22) introduces functions that are not power sums or even elementary symmetric functions e.g.

$$\sum_{1 < j} S_1^2 S_j^2.$$

For the first method the main problem is to write down the system of equations for each  $P_u$ . The general equation (5.10) is not as simple as (5.22) because the coefficients  $c_{\mu\nu}^{(j)}$  depend on the equation, but the solving is trivial since we need only work in terms of elementary symmetric functions.

The main asset of the first method is that it would be quite simple to write a computer programme to evaluate the polynomials  $P_u(a)$  recursively. For the second method, the term (5.24) seems to need human intervention to handle. Also there is this problem of mixed terms and their conversion to power sums.

### 5.5 Statistical applications

The non-central Wishart distribution involves the Bessel function  ${}_0F_1(\frac{1}{2}n; \frac{1}{2}\Sigma^{-1}MM'\Sigma^{-1}XX')$  where  $n$  is the number of degrees of freedom of the sample matrix  $X_{m \times n}$ ,  $E[X] = M$  and the columns of  $X$  are normally and independently distributed with common covariance matrix  $\Sigma$ .

Let  $XX' = nS$ , then  $E[S] = \Sigma + \frac{1}{n}MM'$  and  $S$  is clearly bounded in probability as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ . For  $n$  large  $S$  can be treated as a constant matrix. Thus  $XX'$  can be considered as a function of  $n$  alone for  $n$  sufficiently large, satisfying the condition of LEMMA 5.1.

The Bessel function can be written as  ${}_0F_1(\frac{1}{2}n; nT)$  where  $T = \frac{1}{2}\Sigma^{-1}MM'\Sigma^{-1}S$ . Approximating for  $n$  large gives

$${}_0F_1(\frac{1}{2}n; nT) \simeq \text{etr}(2T)G(n; T) \quad (5.25)$$

where  $G$  can be expanded as in (5.7) or (5.16).

This approximation would be particularly applicable to power function calculations. There we are dealing with small deviations from the central distribution. In

particular, it should be most useful for situations involving only one non-zero latent root or perhaps more generally a small number of them non-zero.

The approximation could also be used to evaluate the likelihood function of the non-central Wishart distribution, viz.,

$$L(M, \Sigma) \propto \text{etr}(-\frac{1}{2}\Sigma^{-1}MM') {}_0F_1(\frac{1}{2}n; nT). \quad (5.26)$$

Its usefulness would be limited to that part of the range for which the latent roots of  $nT$  are small or the sample size would need to be large.

No numerical calculations were done to determine the region of application of the approximation. This would be an extensive study in itself.

## CHAPTER 6

### THE LAGUERRE POLYNOMIAL $L_k^a(s)$

#### 6.1 Introduction

All previous asymptotic expansions are only valid for large  $n$  or for argument matrices with large latent roots. For small values the zonal series converges rapidly enough. The problem is that for "medium" values the asymptotic expansions do not work and the convergence of the zonal series is too slow.

The aim of this Chapter is to work with the zonal series for the  ${}_0F_1$  functions and by rearrangement of series obtain more rapid convergence. The series will be rearranged in terms of the generalised Laguerre polynomials introduced by HERZ [12] and CONSTANTINE [8]. Two such rearrangements will be demonstrated. Both are applicable to the one and two argument Bessel.

A similar Laguerre type expansion exists for the  ${}_1F_1$ . This is involved in the non-central moments of the generalised variance and the likelihood ratio statistic. The expansion is included for reasons of completeness only.

The numerical work is left to Chapter 8. All matrices referred to in the following sections are  $m \times m$ .

#### 6.2 The classical results

Let us first review the classical formulae for functions of a single variable. Referring to Chapter 10,

Section 12 of ERDELYI ET AL [9] we see that the Laguerre polynomials  $\mathcal{L}_n^a(x)$  are defined as

$$\mathcal{L}_n^a(x) = \sum_{m=0}^n \binom{n+a}{n-m} \frac{(-x)^m}{m!} \quad n = 0, 1, 2, \dots \quad (6.1)$$

$$a > -1$$

The identities to be generalised are

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{\mathcal{L}_n^a(x)}{\Gamma(n+a+1)} z^n = (xz)^{-\frac{1}{2}a} e^{xz} J_a [2(xz)^{\frac{1}{2}}] \quad (6.2)$$

and

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{n! \mathcal{L}_n^a(x) \mathcal{L}_n^a(y)}{(a+1)_n} z^n = (1-z)^{-a-1} \exp \left[ -\frac{z(x+y)}{1-z} \right] {}_0F_1(a+1; \frac{xyz}{(1-z)^2}). \quad (6.3)$$

Both can be proved by applying the Laplace transform

$$g(w) = \int_0^{\infty} e^{-vw} v^a f(v) dv. \quad (6.4)$$

Apply to  $z$  in (6.2) and  $y$  in (6.3) and in both cases they reduce to the main generating function for Laguerre polynomials i.e.

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \mathcal{L}_n^a(x) z^n = (1-z)^{-a-1} \exp \left[ \frac{xz}{z-1} \right] \quad |z| < 1. \quad (6.5)$$

As is well known (and easily verified) the functions  $J$  and  ${}_0F_1$  are related by

$$\left(\frac{1}{2}z\right)^{-a} J_a(z) = \frac{1}{\Gamma(a+1)} {}_0F_1(a+1; -\frac{1}{4}z^2). \quad (6.6)$$

A different normalisation is used in [8] so that for  $m=1$  the generalised Laguerre polynomial reduces to a multiple of (6.1) i.e.

$$L_n^a(x) = n! \ell_n^a(x). \quad (6.7)$$

Using (6.6) and (6.7) the identities (6.2), (6.3) and (6.5) can be written in a form suitable for generalisation ( $\Gamma(n+a+1) = \Gamma(a+1)(a+1)_n$ )

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{L_n^a(x) z^n}{(a+1)_n n!} = e^z {}_0F_1(a+1; -xz) \quad (6.8)$$

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{L_n^a(x) L_n^a(y)}{(a+1)_n n!} z^n = (1-z)^{-a-1} \exp\left[-\frac{z(x+y)}{1-z}\right] {}_0F_1\left(a+1; \frac{xyz}{(1-z)^2}\right) \quad (6.9)$$

$|z| < 1$

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{L_n^a(x)}{n!} z^n = (1-z)^{-a-1} \exp\left[\frac{xz}{z-1}\right] \quad |z| < 1. \quad (6.10)$$

### 6.3 The matrix generalisations

The following definitions and THEOREM 6.1 are taken from [8]. Let  $S$  be a positive definite symmetric matrix,  $p = \frac{1}{2}(m+1)$ ,  $a > -1$  and  $\kappa$  a partition of  $k$ , then the generalised Laguerre polynomial  $L_k^a(S)$  has the definition (corresponding to (6.1))

$$L_k^a(S) = (a+p)_\kappa C_\kappa(I) \sum_{n=0}^k \sum_{\nu} \frac{(-1)^n \binom{\kappa}{\nu}}{(a+p)_\nu} \frac{C_\nu(S)}{C_\nu(I)}. \quad (6.11)$$

The "binomial" coefficients  $\binom{\kappa}{\nu}$  are defined by

$$\frac{C_\kappa(I+S)}{C_\kappa(I)} = \sum_{n=0}^k \sum_{\nu} \binom{\kappa}{\nu} \frac{C_\nu(S)}{C_\nu(I)}. \quad (6.12)$$

In Chapter 7 specific methods for calculating the  $\binom{\kappa}{\nu}$  to any order will be considered.

Now the analogue of (6.10).

## THEOREM 6.1 ([8] Theorem 1)

The generating function for the Laguerre polynomials is

$$\det(I-Z)^{-a-p} \int_{\mathcal{V}^{(m)}} \text{etr}(-SH'Z(I-Z)^{-1}H) (dH) = \sum_{k, \kappa} \frac{L_k^a(S)}{k!} \frac{C_\kappa(Z)}{C_\kappa(I)}$$

$$(x \rightarrow S, z \rightarrow Z) \quad \|Z\| < 1 \quad (6.13)$$

or alternatively

$$\sum_{k, \kappa} \frac{L_k^a(S)}{k!} \frac{C_\kappa(Z)}{C_\kappa(I)} = \det(I-Z)^{-a-p} {}_0F_0^{(m)}(S, Z(Z-I)^{-1})$$

$$\|Z\| < 1 \quad (6.14)$$

where  $Z$  is a complex symmetric matrix and  $\|Z\|$  denotes the maximum of the absolute values of the latent roots of  $Z$ . To see that (6.14) is a matrix generalisation of (6.10) write

$$\exp\left[\frac{xz}{z-1}\right] = {}_0F_0(xz(z-1)^{-1}) . \quad (6.15)$$

The two theorems that follow are natural generalisations of (6.8) and (6.9). Both are proved by use of the Laplace transform and their Laplace transforms are shown to reduce to (6.14). As in the single variable case, if two functions have equal Laplace transforms then the functions are equal. We use (cf. (6.4))

$$g(W) = \int_{Z>0} \text{etr}(-ZW) \det Z^a f(Z) (dZ) \quad (6.16)$$

where  $W$  is a complex symmetric matrix. The appropriate

theory is covered in [7].

In the proofs two standard Laplace transforms are used:

1. CONSTANTINE [7]

$$\int_{Z>0} \text{etr}(-ZW) \det Z^{b-p} C_{\kappa}(Z) (dZ) = \Gamma_m(b, \kappa) \det W^{-b} C_{\kappa}(W^{-1}) \quad (6.17)$$

2. CONSTANTINE [8]

$$\int_{Z>0} \text{etr}(-ZW) \det Z^a L_{\kappa}^a(Z) (dZ) = \Gamma_m(a+p, \kappa) \det W^{-a-p} C_{\kappa}(I-W^{-1}). \quad (6.18)$$

The generalisation of (6.8).

THEOREM 6.2

For  $S > 0$ ,  $Z > 0$ ,  $a > -1$

$$\sum_{\kappa, \kappa} \frac{L_{\kappa}^a(S) C_{\kappa}(Z)}{(a+p)_{\kappa} k! C_{\kappa}(I)} = \text{etr}(Z) {}_0F_1^{(m)}(a+p; S, -Z) \quad (6.19)$$

( $x \rightarrow S$ ,  $z \rightarrow Z$ )

Proof

Apply (6.16) to both sides. The left hand side becomes

$$\begin{aligned} & \sum_{\kappa, \kappa} \frac{L_{\kappa}^a(S)}{(a+p)_{\kappa} k! C_{\kappa}(I)} \int_{Z>0} \text{etr}(-ZW) \det Z^a C_{\kappa}(Z) (dZ) \\ & \stackrel{(6.17)}{=} \sum_{\kappa, \kappa} \frac{L_{\kappa}^a(S)}{(a+p)_{\kappa} k! C_{\kappa}(I)} \Gamma_m(a+p, \kappa) \det W^{-a-p} C_{\kappa}(W^{-1}) \\ & \stackrel{(6.14)}{=} \Gamma_m(a+p) [\det W(I-W^{-1})]^{-a-p} {}_0F_0^{(m)}(S, W^{-1}(W^{-1}-I)^{-1}). \end{aligned}$$

Expanding  ${}_0F_1^{(m)}$  in its zonal series and applying (6.16)



the right hand side becomes

$$\begin{aligned} & \sum_{k, \kappa} \frac{(-1)^k C_{\kappa}(S)}{(a+p)_{\kappa} k! C_{\kappa}(I)} \int_{Z>0} \text{etr}(-Z(W-I)) \det Z^a C_{\kappa}(Z) (dZ) \\ & \stackrel{(6.17)}{=} \sum_{k, \kappa} \frac{(-1)^k C_{\kappa}(S)}{(a+p)_{\kappa} k! C_{\kappa}(I)} \Gamma_m(a+p, \kappa) \det(W-I)^{-a-p} C_{\kappa}((W-I)^{-1}) \\ & = \Gamma_m(a+p) \det(W-I)^{-a-p} {}_0F_0^{(m)}(S, (I-W)^{-1}). \end{aligned}$$

Since  $I-W = (W^{-1}-I)W$ , both sides are equal. Q.E.D.

Now the generalisation of (6.9).

### THEOREM 6.3

For  $S > 0, Z > 0, a > -1$

$$\begin{aligned} & \sum_{k, \kappa} \frac{L_{\kappa}^a(S) L_{\kappa}^a(Z)}{(a+p)_{\kappa} k! C_{\kappa}(I)} t^k \\ & = (1-t)^{-m(a+p)} \text{etr}\left(-\frac{t}{1-t}(S+Z)\right) {}_0F_1^{(m)}\left(a+p; \frac{t}{1-t}; S, Z\right) \quad (6.20) \\ & (x \rightarrow S, y \rightarrow Z, z \rightarrow t) \quad |t| < 1. \end{aligned}$$

### Proof

Apply (6.16) to both sides. The left hand side becomes

$$\begin{aligned} & \sum_{k, \kappa} \frac{L_{\kappa}^a(S) t^k}{(a+p)_{\kappa} k! C_{\kappa}(I)} \int_{Z>0} \text{etr}(-ZW) \det Z^a L_{\kappa}^a(Z) (dZ) \\ & \stackrel{(6.18)}{=} \sum_{k, \kappa} \frac{L_{\kappa}^a(S) t^k}{(a+p)_{\kappa} k! C_{\kappa}(I)} \Gamma_m(a+p, \kappa) \det W^{-a-p} C_{\kappa}(I-W^{-1}) \\ & = \Gamma_m(a+p) \det W^{-a-p} \sum_{k, \kappa} \frac{L_{\kappa}^a(S) C_{\kappa}(t(I-W^{-1}))}{k! C_{\kappa}(I)} \\ & \stackrel{(6.13)}{=} \Gamma_m(a+p) [\det W(I-t(I-W^{-1}))]^{-a-p} \\ & \quad \int_{\mathcal{O}(m)} \text{etr}[SH' t(I-W^{-1})(t(I-W^{-1})-I)^{-1}H] (dH) \end{aligned}$$

The right hand side becomes

$$\begin{aligned}
 & (1-t)^{-m(a+p)} \text{etr}\left(-\frac{t}{1-t}S\right) \sum_{k, \kappa} \frac{C_{\kappa}\left(\frac{t}{(1-t)^2}S\right)}{(a+p)_{\kappa} k! C_{\kappa}(I)} \\
 & \int_{Z>0} \text{etr}(-Z(W + \frac{t}{1-t}I)) \det Z^a C_{\kappa}(Z) (dZ) \\
 (6.17) \quad & = (1-t)^{-m(a+p)} \text{etr}\left(-\frac{t}{1-t}S\right) \sum_{k, \kappa} \frac{C_{\kappa}\left(\frac{t}{(1-t)^2}S\right)}{(a+p)_{\kappa} k! C_{\kappa}(I)} \\
 & \Gamma_m(a+p, \kappa) \det(W + \frac{t}{1-t}I)^{-a-p} C_{\kappa}\left((W + \frac{t}{1-t}I)^{-1}\right) \\
 & = \Gamma_m(a+p) \det[(1-t)W+tI]^{-a-p} \\
 & \int_{\mathcal{D}(m)} \text{etr}\left(-\frac{t}{1-t}S\right) \text{etr}\left[\frac{t}{(1-t)^2}SH'(W + \frac{t}{1-t}I)^{-1}H\right] (dH).
 \end{aligned}$$

The exponent in the integral reduces to

$$\frac{t}{1-t}SH'[-I + ((1-t)W+tI)^{-1}]H.$$

Comparing the two sides for the terms in det we have  $W(I-t(I-W^{-1})) = (1-t)W+tI$ . Finally we must show that

$$t(I-W^{-1})(t(I-W^{-1})-I)^{-1} = \frac{t}{1-t} [((1-t)W+tI)^{-1}-I].$$

Taking the right hand side gives

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \frac{t}{1-t}(W-t(W-I))^{-1} [I-(1-t)W-tI] \\
 & = t(I-t(I-W^{-1}))^{-1}(W^{-1}-I). \quad \text{Q.E.D.}
 \end{aligned}$$

#### 6.4 The non-central moments of the likelihood ratio statistic

The non-central moments of the generalised variance  $\det(XX')$  were given in [12] as

$$\mathbb{E}[\det(\mathbf{XX}')^k] = 2^{km} \frac{\Gamma_m(k + \frac{1}{2}s)}{\Gamma_m(\frac{1}{2}s)} \det \Sigma^k {}_1F_1^{(m)}(-k; \frac{1}{2}s; -\frac{1}{2}\Omega) \quad (6.21)$$

where  $\mathbf{XX}'_{m \times m}$  has the non-central Wishart on  $s$  degrees of freedom and noncentrality  $\Omega = \text{diag}(\omega_1)$  and the  $\omega_1$  the latent roots from  $\det(\mathbf{MM}' - \omega\Omega) = 0$ . If  $\mathbf{XX}'$  is as above and  $\mathbf{YY}'_{m \times m}$  is a central Wishart on  $t$  degrees of freedom then the non-central moments of the likelihood ratio statistic have been given in [7] as

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbb{E} \left[ \left( \frac{\det \mathbf{YY}'}{\det(\mathbf{XX}' + \mathbf{YY}')} \right)^k \right] &= \\ &= \frac{\Gamma_m(k + \frac{1}{2}t) \Gamma_m(\frac{1}{2}(s+t))}{\Gamma_m(\frac{1}{2}t) \Gamma_m(k + \frac{1}{2}(s+t))} {}_1F_1^{(m)}(k; k + \frac{1}{2}(s+t); -\frac{1}{2}\Omega). \end{aligned} \quad (6.22)$$

A classical formula for the  ${}_1F_1$  in Laguerre polynomials is given by RAINVILLE [29] as

$$(1-t)^{-c} {}_1F_1(c; 1+a; \frac{xt}{t-1}) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(c)_n L_n^a(x) t^n}{(1+a)^n n!}. \quad (6.23)$$

This generalises to a formula given by JAMES [21] equation (138).

THEOREM 6.4

$$\begin{aligned} \det(\mathbf{I}-\mathbf{Z})^{-c} {}_1F_1^{(m)}(c; a+p; \mathbf{S}, \mathbf{Z}(\mathbf{Z}-\mathbf{I})^{-1}) \\ = \sum_{k, \kappa} \frac{(c)_\kappa L_\kappa^a(\mathbf{S}) C_\kappa(\mathbf{Z})}{(a+p)_\kappa k! C_\kappa(\mathbf{I})} \end{aligned} \quad (6.24)$$

( $t \rightarrow \mathbf{Z}$ ,  $x \rightarrow \mathbf{S}$ ).

Proof

The proof follows by applying the Laplace transform to  $\mathbf{S}$ . Rearrangements required are the same as those of

[8] Theorem 1. Q.E.D.

Using the trick (1.17) gives  $S=I$ ,  $Z(Z-I)^{-1} = -\frac{1}{2}\Omega$ ,  
and  $Z = \Omega(\Omega + 2I)^{-1}$ . No attempt is made to evaluate (6.21)  
and (6.22) numerically.

## CHAPTER 7

### CALCULATION OF ZONAL POLYNOMIALS AND $\binom{\kappa}{\nu}$

#### 7.1 Introduction

Recently JAMES [24] developed an expansion of zonal polynomials in terms of the monomial symmetric functions  $M_{\kappa}(S)$  (defined by (7.1)). Sections 2 and 3 deal with the numerical calculation of the Bessel functions using the zonal series. In section 3 an algorithm for the recursive evaluation of the  $M_{\kappa}(S)$  is stated and proved.

Also, as stated in Chapter 6, in order to proceed with the evaluation of the  $L_{\kappa}^{\alpha}(S)$  a method for calculating the  $\binom{\kappa}{\nu}$  to any order is needed. In section 4 a formula for them, in terms of the product coefficients  $g_{\nu\mu}^{\kappa}$  (defined by (7.21)), is presented. Of course it then follows that we need to determine the  $g_{\nu\mu}^{\kappa}$  and a method using the monomial symmetric function expansion is given in the following section.

Finally section 6 contains some summation identities for the  $g_{\nu\mu}^{\kappa}$  and  $\binom{\kappa}{\nu}$  which could prove fruitful if studied further.

#### 7.2 The $Z_{\kappa}(\cdot)$ in terms of the $M_{\kappa}(\cdot)$

The fundamental units of the theory are the zonal polynomials  $Z_{\kappa}(S)$ . As yet there is no known direct formula for them. JAMES [24] found a partial differential equation satisfied by the  $Z_{\kappa}(S)$  and showed how to use this

P.D.E to find expansions of the zonal polynomials in terms of the monomial symmetric functions (msf's)  $M_{\kappa}(S)$ .

First the definition of  $M_{\kappa}(S)$ . As usual  $S$  is an  $m \times m$  symmetric matrix with latent roots  $s_1, s_2, \dots, s_m$ . Let  $\kappa = (k_1 k_2 \dots k_r) = (1^{\pi_1} 2^{\pi_2} \dots i^{\pi_i} \dots)$   $r \leq m$ . Then

$$M_{\kappa}(S) = \sum_{i, j, \dots, u} s_1^{k_1} s_j^{k_2} \dots s_u^{k_r} \quad i, j, \dots, u = 1, 2, \dots, m \quad (7.1)$$

where the summation is over all distinct  $i, j, \dots, u$  for which each distinct term appears once only. The number of terms in the sum is

$$\frac{[m]_r}{\pi_1! \pi_2! \dots \pi_i! \dots} \quad (7.2)$$

where  $[m]_r = m(m-1)\dots(m-r+1)$  ( $[m]_r = (-1)^r (-m)_r$ ).

The P.D.E. for  $Z_{\kappa}(S)$  is

$$\sum_{i=1}^m s_i^2 \frac{\partial^2}{\partial s_i^2} Z_{\kappa}(S) + \sum_{i \neq j}^m \frac{s_i^2}{s_i - s_j} \frac{\partial}{\partial s_i} Z_{\kappa}(S) - \sum_{i=1}^m k_i (k_i + m - i - 1) Z_{\kappa}(S) = 0 \quad (7.3)$$

where  $\kappa$  is a partition with at most  $m$  nonzero parts.

My task here was to write a computer programme using the recurrence relations derived from (7.3) to find the coefficients  $c_{\kappa\tau}$  of the expansion

$$Z_{\kappa}(S) = \sum_{\tau \leq \kappa} c_{\kappa\tau} M_{\tau}(S) \quad (7.4)$$

where  $\kappa, \tau$  are partitions of  $k$  and the ordering is defined in section 1.4. I found it feasible to compute all values of  $c_{\kappa\tau}$  for  $k \leq 13$ .

The formula for the leading coefficient is ( $k_{r+1}=0$ )

$$c_{\kappa\kappa} = 2^{\kappa} \prod_{\ell=1}^r \prod_{i=1}^{\ell} \left( \frac{1}{2}\ell - \frac{1}{2}(i-1) + k_1 - k_{\ell} \right)_{k_{\ell} - k_{\ell+1}} \quad (7.5)$$

and the recurrence relation is

$$c_{\kappa\tau} = \sum_{\tau < \mu \leq \kappa} \frac{[(\ell_1+t) - (\ell_j-t)] c_{\kappa\mu}}{\rho_{\kappa} - \rho_{\tau}} \quad (7.6)$$

where

$$\rho_{\tau} = \sum_{i=1}^s \ell_i (\ell_i - 1) \quad \tau = (\ell_1 \dots \ell_s) \quad (7.7)$$

and  $\mu = (\ell_1 \dots \ell_1+t \dots \ell_j-t \dots \ell_s)$  for  $t = 1, 2, \dots, \ell_j$  such that when the elements of  $\mu$  are arranged in descending order the inequality  $\tau < \mu \leq \kappa$  is satisfied.

Tables for  $k = 6, 7$  (Table 7.1) and  $k = 8$  (Table 7.2) are given. A table for  $k = 9$  would have 31 rows and columns with some of the entries having 9 digits. This would most certainly require at least two pages and seems to me to be too vast to cope with by hand anyway.

The tables in [24] are for  $k = 1, \dots, 5$  and do not go far enough to reveal a very interesting point. For  $k = 6$  there are two zero entries in the table. These zeros are easily explained. For example

$$Z_{(41^2)}(S) = 270 M_{(41^2)}(S) + 0 M_{(3^2)}(S) + \dots$$

Note that in the lexicographic ordering a partition of 2 parts follows one of 3 parts. If  $S$  has 2 non-zero latent roots then clearly  $M_{(41^2)}(S) = 0$  and by theory  $Z_{(41^2)}(S) = 0$  but  $M_{(3^2)}(S) \neq 0$  hence its coefficient must

$x_{[2\kappa]}^{(1)}$

$M_{\kappa}$

$K=6$

6	51	42	411	33	321	3111	222	2211	21111	111111
6	10395	4725	3150	4500	2700	1800	2430	1620	1080	720
51	1050	600	1170	540	852	1008	648	828	816	720
42	432	432	288	288	432	504	648	576	648	720
411	270	270	0	162	468	108	348	576	720	616
33	720	432	288	432	288	528	576	720	132	132
321	112	168	168	288	456	720	2673	1925	144	0
3111	360	240	360	720	462	2640	168	720	1485	720
222	120	288	720	2640	168	720	1485	720	132	132
2111	168	720	1485	720	132	132	132	132	132	132
111111	720	132	132	132	132	132	132	132	132	132

$K=7$

$M_{\kappa}$

$x_{[2\kappa]}^{(1)}$

7	61	52	511	43	421	4111	331	3211	31111	2221	21111	111111
7	135135	72765	54535	39690	55125	33075	22050	18900	12600	17010	11340	7560
61	11340	6300	12390	5400	8700	10350	4100	6120	7920	6480	6660	6000
52	3600	2400	2310	0	1320	3870	1185	792	2652	4464	1944	4920
511	2880	1728	648	900	0	540	2088	360	1512	3240	5040	7644
43	421	4111	331	322	3211	31111	2221	21111	111111	111111	111111	111111
421	1005	672	1232	1344	1344	1344	1344	1344	1344	1344	1344	1344
4111	840	540	540	540	540	540	540	540	540	540	540	540
331	320	768	430	1272	2640	3720	2568	3720	5040	12012	12012	12012
322	648	648	648	648	648	648	648	648	648	648	648	648
3211	1005	672	1232	1344	1344	1344	1344	1344	1344	1344	1344	1344
31111	840	540	540	540	540	540	540	540	540	540	540	540
2221	320	768	430	1272	2640	3720	2568	3720	5040	12012	12012	12012
22111	648	648	648	648	648	648	648	648	648	648	648	648
211111	1005	672	1232	1344	1344	1344	1344	1344	1344	1344	1344	1344
1111111	840	540	540	540	540	540	540	540	540	540	540	540

TABLE 7.1 The  $C_{KT}$



K=H

$X[2x](1)$

$z_x$	$M_k$	71	62	611	53	521	5111	2222	44	431	422	4211
41111	1081080	473100	582120	793400	107730	146570	20500	28480	38480	50320	64400	82240
176400	370000	252400	151200	100400	204120	136400	771750	441000	396900	264410	60440	40320
71	145330	74300	158870	68150	107730	124620	63000	96700	72900	45450	40320	104
67500	67500	40000	72400	75000	68400	58320	63140	58420	49680	40320	1260	
35424	37800	25200	38476	40152	34800	41400	19440	24440	42936	39024	1260	
611	45000	7020	24480	24570	0	13650	40320	0	11700	7400	26550	240
17080	17080	42760	42760	12450	25340	34800	34800	34800	34800	40320	40320	
53	19884	25352	23904	27210	27048	29520	25920	14400	20448	15552	14472	3640
4752	8064	11016	17208	25920	25920	31530	33496	36720	40320	40320	38220	
5111	16920	0	3688	2542	11232	24440	1724	4054	18576	30240	40320	23100
44	4214	13824	20496	20736	24192	23040	31100	27600	31104	20736	13424	1430
431	5184	4752	9024	8416	12768	16320	9700	15210	21696	24520	40320	68640
422	4536	3024	2016	6496	4232	13440	1344	18384	27360	40320	60040	
4211	4320	0	1200	2200	5456	12720	2400	7224	14208	25200	40320	262080
41111	3060	0	0	0	2376	11520	84	1544	8208	21600	40320	76440
332	5040	3360	6160	6720	8400	6720	11760	10400	25200	40320	51480	
3311	2688	1792	4992	7680	2688	6144	13056	23040	40320	150150	336336	
3221	1600	2400	4000	3840	5360	11040	20880	40320	40320	40320	40320	262080
32111	1296	4320	3600	0	1944	7008	18000	40320	40320	91728	24024	
2222	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
22211	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
221111	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
2111111	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
11111111	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

TABLE 7.2 The  $C_{KT}$

be zero.

By a generalisation of the above it is easy to prove

LEMMA 7.1

If partition  $\kappa$  of  $r$  parts is followed in the lexicographic list by a partition  $\tau$  of less than  $r$  parts, then  $c_{\kappa\tau} = 0$ .

7.3 Zonal series and evaluating the  $M_{\kappa}(S)$

The Bessel functions have the zonal series definitions

$${}_0F_1(c;R) = \sum_{\kappa, \kappa} \frac{C_{\kappa}(R)}{(c)_{\kappa} k!} \quad (7.8)$$

$${}_0F_1^{(m)}(c;R,S) = \sum_{\kappa, \kappa} \frac{C_{\kappa}(R)C_{\kappa}(S)}{(c)_{\kappa} C_{\kappa}(I) k!} \quad (7.9)$$

where

$$C_{\kappa}(S) = c(\kappa) Z_{\kappa}(S)$$

and  $c(\kappa) = \frac{\chi_{[2\kappa]}(1)}{1.3\dots(2k-1)}$ . The character

$\chi_{[2\kappa]}(1)$  is easily calculated using a modified form of the expression given by JAMES [22] for  $C_{\kappa}(I)$ . Its consideration is left to Appendix 3. From (7.4) it is clear that with  $c_{\kappa\tau}$  known everything depends on the evaluation of the  $M_{\kappa}(S)$ .

Direct evaluation of (7.1) by summing over all  $[m]_r$  permutations and dividing by the repetition factor  $\pi_1! \dots \pi_1! \dots$  is a very tedious process. What is needed is an algorithm for building up a table of the  $M_{\kappa}(S)$  by expressing each  $msf$  in terms of  $msf$ 's of lower degree.

The clue is given by VAN DER WAERDEN [32] in exercises 5,6 on page 82.

$$\text{Quoting directly with } (m) = \sum_{i=1}^h x_i^m$$

"5. Let

$$(k_1 \dots k_h) = \sum x_1^{k_1} x_2^{k_2} \dots x_h^{k_h}$$

with the summation performed on all distinct permuted terms which may be obtained if we take the order of the subscripts different from  $1, 2, \dots, h$ . Prove that

$$\begin{aligned} (k_1 \dots k_h)(m) = & c_1(k_1+m, k_2 \dots k_h) + c_2(k_1, k_2+m, \dots k_h) + \dots \\ & + c_h(k_1, k_2 \dots k_h+m) + c_0(k_1 \dots k_h, m) \end{aligned} \quad (7.10)$$

where the coefficients  $c_i (i=1, \dots, h)$  and  $c_0$  indicate how many of the integers in the symbols to which they belong are equal to  $k_i+m$  and to  $m$ , respectively.

6. Solve the formula found in Ex.5 for  $(k_1 \dots k_h, m) \dots$ "

The equation (7.10) is not strictly correct but a corrected version is given by (7.11). Let  $\kappa = (k_1 \dots k_r) = (1^{n_1} \dots i^{n_i} \dots)$  and also let  $(k_1 \dots k_r)$  indicate the msf of  $m$  variables associated with the partition  $\kappa$ . Abbreviate

$r$  part msf  $\equiv$  msf associated with  $r$  part partition.

The one part msf or power sum  $r_t$  can be written  $M_{(t)}$  or just  $(t)$ .

Considering the product of  $M_\kappa$  and  $r_t$ , (7.10) is replaced by

## THEOREM 7.1

$$\begin{aligned}
 (k_1 \dots k_r)(t) &= c_1(k_1+t, k_2 \dots k_r) + c_2(k_1, k_2+t, \dots k_r) + \dots \\
 &+ c_q(k_1 \dots k_q+t \dots k_r) + \dots \\
 &+ c_r(k_1 \dots k_r+t) + c_0(k_1 \dots k_r, t)
 \end{aligned} \tag{7.11}$$

where

$$\begin{aligned}
 c_q &= \frac{\pi_1+1}{\pi_j} & k_q &= j \\
 & & k_q+t &= i \\
 c_0 &= \pi_1+1 & t &= i.
 \end{aligned}$$

## REMARKS

In particular

$$\begin{aligned}
 c_1 &= \frac{1}{\pi_j} & k_1 &= j \\
 & & k_1+t &= i \quad \text{and} \quad \pi_1 = 0.
 \end{aligned}$$

The terms on the right hand side of (7.11) are not necessarily distinct. When like terms are collected together all resulting coefficients are integers. As a numerical example

$$\begin{aligned}
 (2211)(1) &= \frac{1}{2}(3211) + \frac{1}{2}(2311) + \frac{3}{2}(2221) + \frac{3}{2}(2212) + 3(22111) \\
 &= (3211) + 3(2221) + 3(22111).
 \end{aligned}$$

The table building algorithm is given by

## COROLLARY

A rearrangement of (7.11) gives

$$\begin{aligned}
 (k_1 \dots k_r, t) &= \frac{1}{c_0} \{ (k_1 \dots k_r)(t) - c_1(k_1+t \dots k_r) - \dots \\
 &\quad - c_r(k_1 \dots k_r+t) \}
 \end{aligned} \tag{7.12}$$

## REMARKS

This says that any  $r+1$  part msf can be expressed in terms of  $r$  part msf's and a power sum. The power

sums are easily calculated. For the 2 part msf's

$$(k)(t) = (k+t) + c_0(k,t)$$

where

$$c_0 = \begin{cases} 1 & k \neq t \\ 2 & k = t \end{cases}$$

and hence

$$(k,t) = \frac{1}{c_0} \{ (k)(t) - (k+t) \}.$$

Similarly we can calculate all required  $r+1$  part msf's when the appropriate  $r$  part ones are known.

Note that if  $k_i = k_{i+1}$  the two msf's  $(k_1 \dots k_{i+t}, k_{i+1} \dots k_r)$  and  $(k_1 \dots k_i, k_{i+1} + t, \dots k_r)$  are equal but are treated separately in (7.12) as in (7.11). This seems naive for hand methods but for computing purposes the "dumb" way is often the best way to make sure that all cases are considered. By hand it would be only necessary to determine the distinct msf's and multiply by the coefficients  $\pi_{i+1}$ .

The final step is to verify (7.11).

### Proof

Let  $(k_1 k_2 \dots k_r)$  be a msf in the indeterminates  $s_1, s_2 \dots s_m$ .

Then

$$(k_1 k_2 \dots k_r)(t) = \{ \sum s_u^{k_1} \dots s_v^{k_q} \dots s_w^{k_r} \} \left\{ \sum_{v=1}^m s_v^t \right\}. \quad (7.13)$$

Perform the product on the right hand side. Now the number of terms in which  $s_v^{k_q+t}$  occurs, with  $k_q = j$ , is

$$\frac{[m-1]_{r-1}}{\pi_1! \dots (\pi_j-1)! \dots} \cdot \quad (7.14)$$

However the indeterminate  $s_v$  can be associated with  $k_q$  in only  $1/\pi_j$  of these terms as  $s_v$  must also be associated equally as often with the  $\pi_j-1$  other parts also equal to  $j$ . Since  $v$  may take  $m$  possible values the total number of terms of the form  $s_u^{k_1} \dots s_v^{k_q+t} \dots s_w^{k_r}$  is

$$\frac{m}{\pi_j} \frac{[m-1]_{r-1}}{\pi_1! \dots (\pi_j-1)! \dots} \cdot \quad (7.15)$$

$$\text{Let } (k_1 \dots k_q+t \dots k_r) = (1^{\pi_1} \dots j^{\pi_j-1} \dots i^{\pi_i+1} \dots).$$

Then the number of terms in its associated msf is

$$\frac{[m]_r}{\pi_1! \dots (\pi_j-1)! \dots (\pi_i+1)! \dots} \quad (7.16)$$

and

$$c_q = \frac{(7.15)}{(7.16)} = \frac{\pi_i+1}{\pi_j} \cdot \quad (7.17)$$

The term  $s_u^{k_1} \dots s_v^{k_r} s_w^t$  occurs in

$$\frac{m[m-1]_r}{\pi_1! \dots \pi_i! \dots} \quad (7.18)$$

ways, while if  $(k_1 \dots k_r, t) = (1^{\pi_1} \dots i^{\pi_i+1} \dots)$  this has

$$\frac{[m]_{r+1}}{\pi_1! \dots (\pi_i+1)! \dots} \quad (7.19)$$

terms and

$$c_0 = \frac{(7.18)}{(7.19)} = \pi_i+1. \quad (7.20)$$

Q.E.D.

#### 7.4 The formula for $\binom{\kappa}{\nu}$

The "binomial" coefficients  $\binom{\kappa}{\nu}$  are defined by (6.12) while the  $g_{\nu\mu}^{\kappa}$  are given by

$$C_{\nu}(S) C_{\mu}(S) = \sum_{\kappa} g_{\nu\mu}^{\kappa} C_{\kappa}(S) \quad (7.21)$$

where  $\kappa$  is a partition of  $k = r+s$

$\nu$  is a partition of  $r$

$\mu$  is a partition of  $s$ .

The relationship between  $\binom{\kappa}{\nu}$  and  $g_{\nu\mu}^{\kappa}$  is given by the

#### THEOREM 7.2

If  $k, r, s, \kappa, \nu, \mu$  are as defined above, then

$$\binom{\kappa}{\nu} = \binom{k}{s} \sum_{\mu} g_{\nu\mu}^{\kappa} . \quad (7.22)$$

The proof will follow from an easily established identity.

#### LEMMA 7.2

$${}_0F_0^{(m)}(I+A, B) = \text{etr}(B) {}_0F_0^{(m)}(A, B) . \quad (7.23)$$

#### Proof

From the integral definition the left hand side of (7.23) is

$$\begin{aligned} {}_0F_0^{(m)}(I+A, B) &= \int_{\mathcal{O}(m)} \text{etr}[(I+A)H'BH](dH) \\ &= \text{etr}(B) \int_{\mathcal{O}(m)} \text{etr}(AH'BH)(dH) . \quad \text{Q.E.D.} \end{aligned}$$

Proof (THEOREM 7.2)

Writing the hypergeometric functions of (7.23) in zonal series

$$\sum_{k, \kappa} \frac{C_{\kappa}(I+A)C_{\kappa}(B)}{k! C_{\kappa}(I)} = \left\{ \sum_{s, \mu} \frac{C_{\mu}(B)}{s!} \right\} \left\{ \sum_{r, \nu} \frac{C_{\nu}(A)C_{\nu}(B)}{r! C_{\nu}(I)} \right\}. \quad (7.24)$$

Since all three zonal series converge everywhere in  $A, B > 0$  we can take the Cauchy product of the right hand side to give

$$\begin{aligned} & \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \sum_{r+s=k} \frac{1}{r!s!} \sum_{\nu, \mu} \frac{C_{\nu}(A)}{C_{\nu}(I)} C_{\nu}(B) C_{\mu}(B) \\ (7.21) \quad & = \sum_k \sum_{r+s=k} \frac{1}{r!s!} \sum_{\nu, \mu} \frac{C_{\nu}(A)}{C_{\nu}(I)} \sum_{\kappa} g_{\nu\mu}^{\kappa} C_{\kappa}(B). \end{aligned}$$

Rearranging gives

$$\sum_{k, \kappa} \frac{C_{\kappa}(B)}{k!} \sum_{r+s=k} \sum_{\nu} \frac{C_{\nu}(A)}{C_{\nu}(I)} \binom{k}{s} \sum_{\mu} g_{\nu\mu}^{\kappa}.$$

Equating coefficients of  $C_{\kappa}(B)/k!$  for this and the left hand side of (7.24) gives

$$\frac{C_{\kappa}(I+A)}{C_{\kappa}(I)} = \sum_{r=0}^k \sum_{\nu} \frac{C_{\nu}(A)}{C_{\nu}(I)} \binom{k}{s} \sum_{\mu} g_{\nu\mu}^{\kappa}. \quad (7.25)$$

The defining relation is

$$\frac{C_{\kappa}(I+A)}{C_{\kappa}(I)} = \sum_{r=0}^k \sum_{\nu} \frac{C_{\nu}(A)}{C_{\nu}(I)} \binom{\kappa}{\nu}$$

and the comparison of this with (7.25) gives (7.22). Q.E.D.

If we put  $A = aI$  in the defining relation the result is

$$(1+a)^k = \sum_{r=0}^k a^r \sum_{\nu} \binom{\kappa}{\nu} \text{ for each } \kappa$$



and comparison with the binomial expansion of  $(1+a)^k$  gives

LEMMA 7.3

$$\binom{k}{r} = \sum_{\nu} \binom{\kappa}{\nu} \quad \text{for all partitions } \kappa \text{ of } k. \quad (7.26)$$

This shows the connection between the "binomial" coefficients  $\binom{\kappa}{\nu}$  and the true binomial coefficients  $\binom{k}{r}$ .

A computer program was written to determine the  $\binom{\kappa}{\nu}$  for  $k = 1, 2, \dots, 9$ . The values obtained are in decimal form. The values  $k=1, 2, 3, 4$  have been given by CONSTANTINE [8] as fractions. The tables for  $k = 5, 6$  (see TABLES 7.3, 7.4) were obtained by printing out the values to 8 decimal places and converting these manually to fractions. It will be shown later on that the  $g_{\nu\mu}^{\kappa}$  are rational and this implies that the  $\binom{\kappa}{\nu}$  are too. The programming is discussed in Appendix 4.

#### 7.5 The $g_{\nu\mu}^{\kappa}$ and products of monomial symmetric functions.

THEOREM 7.2 gives the relationship between  $\binom{\kappa}{\nu}$  and  $g_{\nu\mu}^{\kappa}$ , but from a practical viewpoint this result is useless unless the  $g_{\nu\mu}^{\kappa}$  are known. In this section is presented an algorithm for generating them. This method has been programmed for a computer evaluation of the  $g_{\nu\mu}^{\kappa}$  and hence the  $\binom{\kappa}{\nu}$  for  $\kappa$  a partition of  $k$  and  $k = 1, 2, \dots, 9$ . Details are in Appendix 4.

Let  $\kappa, \tau, \delta, \varepsilon$  be partitions of  $k = r+t$   
 $\alpha, \nu$  be partitions of  $r$   
 $\beta, \mu$  be partitions of  $t$ .

k = 5

	$\kappa$						
	(5)	(41)	(32)	(31 <sup>2</sup> )	(2 <sup>2</sup> 1)	(21 <sup>3</sup> )	(1 <sup>5</sup> )
(0)	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
(1)	5	5	5	5	5	5	5
(2)	10	7	16/3	13/3	10/3	2	•
(1 <sup>2</sup> )	•	3	14/3	17/3	20/3	8	10
(3)	10	23/5	8/5	7/5	•	•	•
(21)	•	27/5	42/5	33/5	15/2	9/2	•
(1 <sup>3</sup> )	•	•	•	2	5/2	11/2	10
(4)	5	8/7	•	•	•	•	•
(31)	•	27/7	8/3	7/3	•	•	•
$\nu$ (2 <sup>2</sup> )	•	•	7/3	•	5/3	•	•
(21 <sup>2</sup> )	•	•	•	8/3	10/3	18/5	•
(1 <sup>4</sup> )	•	•	•	•	•	7/5	5
(5)	1	•	•	•	•	•	•
(41)	•	1	•	•	•	•	•
(32)	•	•	1	•	•	•	•
(31 <sup>2</sup> )	•	•	•	1	•	•	•
(2 <sup>2</sup> 1)	•	•	•	•	1	•	•
(21 <sup>3</sup> )	•	•	•	•	•	1	•
(1 <sup>5</sup> )	•	•	•	•	•	•	1

TABLE 7.3 The  $\binom{\kappa}{\nu}$

$k = 6$

	$\kappa$										
	(6)	(51)	(42)	(41 <sup>2</sup> )	(3 <sup>2</sup> )	(321)	(31 <sup>3</sup> )	(2 <sup>3</sup> )	(2 <sup>2</sup> 1 <sup>2</sup> )	(21 <sup>4</sup> )	(1 <sup>6</sup> )
(0)	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
(1)	6	6	6	6	6	6	6	6	6	6	6
(2)	15	54/3	9	8	8	19/3	5	5	4	7/3	*
(1 <sup>2</sup> )	*	11/3	6	7	7	26/3	10	10	11	38/3	15
(3)	20	56/5	28/5	26/5	16/5	28/15	8/5	*	*	*	*
(21)	*	44/5	72/5	123/10	84/5	74/5	57/5	15	12	7	*
(1 <sup>3</sup> )	*	*	*	5/2	*	10/3	7	5	8	13	20
(4)	15	39/7	48/35	9/7	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
(31)	*	66/7	66/7	61/7	8	14/3	4	*	*	*	*
(2 <sup>2</sup> )	*	*	21/5	*	7	11/3	*	5	5/2	*	*
(21 <sup>2</sup> )	*	*	*	5	*	20/3	46/5	10	52/5	42/5	*
(1 <sup>4</sup> )	*	*	*	*	*	*	9/5	*	21/10	33/5	15
(5)	6	10/9	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
(41)	*	44/9	12/5	9/4	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
(32)	*	*	18/5	*	6	14/9	*	*	*	*	*
(31 <sup>2</sup> )	*	*	*	15/4	*	20/9	24/7	*	*	*	*
(2 <sup>2</sup> 1)	*	*	*	*	*	20/9	*	6	3	*	*
(21 <sup>3</sup> )	*	*	*	*	*	*	18/7	*	3	14/3	*
(1 <sup>5</sup> )	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	4/3	6
(6)	1	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
(51)	*	1	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
(42)	*	*	1	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
(41 <sup>2</sup> )	*	*	*	1	*	*	*	*	*	*	*
(3 <sup>2</sup> )	*	*	*	*	1	*	*	*	*	*	*
(321)	*	*	*	*	*	1	*	*	*	*	*
(31 <sup>3</sup> )	*	*	*	*	*	*	1	*	*	*	*
(2 <sup>3</sup> )	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	1	*	*	*
(2 <sup>2</sup> 1 <sup>2</sup> )	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	1	*	*
(21 <sup>4</sup> )	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	1	*
(1 <sup>6</sup> )	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	1

TABLE 7.4 The  $\binom{\kappa}{\nu}$

Assume for convenience  $r \geq t$ . Drop the argument matrix i.e. put  $C_K = C_K(\cdot)$ ,  $M_K = M_K(\cdot)$  as the matrix or its size does not enter into any of the following relationships.

From (7.4)

$$C_K = \sum_{\tau \leq K} a_{K\tau} M_\tau \quad (7.27)$$

where  $a_{K\tau} = c(\kappa) c_{K\tau}$ . Now using (7.27)

$$C_\nu C_\mu = \sum_{\alpha \leq \nu} \sum_{\beta \leq \mu} a_{\nu\alpha} a_{\mu\beta} M_\alpha M_\beta. \quad (7.28)$$

Let  $M_\alpha = (f_1 \dots f_r)$   $M_\beta = (h_1 \dots h_t)$  and it is essential in the following that none of the parts  $f_i$  and  $h_j$  are zero. Then the msf of highest weight obtainable from the product of  $M_\alpha$  and  $M_\beta$  is  $M_\tau = (f_1+h_1 \dots f_t+h_t \dots f_r)$ . Let

$$M_\alpha M_\beta = \sum_{\delta \leq \tau} e_{\alpha\beta}^\delta M_\delta \quad (7.29)$$

(analogous to (7.21) for  $g_{\nu\mu}$ ). Then (7.28) can be written as

$$C_\nu C_\mu = \sum_{\alpha \leq \nu} \sum_{\beta \leq \mu} \sum_{\delta \leq \tau} a_{\nu\alpha} a_{\mu\beta} e_{\alpha\beta}^\delta M_\delta. \quad (7.30)$$

The msf's of highest weight in  $C_\nu$  and  $C_\mu$  are  $M_\nu$  and  $M_\mu$  respectively. Let the msf of highest weight in  $M_\nu M_\mu$  be  $M_\kappa$ , then if we define  $e_{\alpha\beta}^\delta = 0$   $\tau < \delta \leq \kappa$ , (7.30) can be written as

$$C_\nu C_\mu = \sum_{\delta \leq \kappa} d_{\nu\mu}^\delta M_\delta \quad (7.31)$$

where

$$d_{\nu\mu}^\delta = \sum_{\alpha \leq \nu} \sum_{\beta \leq \mu} a_{\nu\alpha} a_{\mu\beta} e_{\alpha\beta}^\delta.$$

The defining relation for the  $g_{\nu\mu}^{\kappa}$  can be written as

$$C_{\nu} C_{\mu} = \sum_{\delta \leq \kappa} g_{\nu\mu}^{\delta} C_{\delta} \quad (7.32)$$

so a sequential comparison of the coefficients in (7.31) and (7.32) will give us the  $g_{\nu\mu}^{\delta}$ .

For example

$$C_{\kappa} = \sum_{\varepsilon \leq \kappa} a_{\kappa\varepsilon} M_{\varepsilon}$$

and equating the coefficients of  $M_{\kappa}$  gives

$$g_{\nu\mu}^{\kappa} = \frac{d_{\nu\mu}^{\kappa}}{a_{\kappa\kappa}}. \quad (7.33)$$

Subtract  $g_{\nu\mu}^{\kappa} C_{\kappa}$  from (7.31)

$$d_{\nu\mu}^{\kappa} \rightarrow 0$$

$$d_{\nu\mu}^{\delta} \rightarrow d_{\nu\mu}^{\delta} - g_{\nu\mu}^{\kappa} a_{\kappa\delta} \quad \delta < \kappa.$$

Then if  $\tau$  is immediately below  $\kappa$  in the lexicographic list

$$g_{\nu\mu}^{\tau} = \frac{d_{\nu\mu}^{\tau}}{a_{\tau\tau}}$$

and so on. Thus we can express the  $g_{\nu\mu}^{\kappa}$  in terms of the  $a_{\kappa\delta}$  (known) and the  $e_{\alpha\beta}^{\delta}$ .

The calculation of the  $e_{\alpha\beta}^{\delta}$  is quite straightforward, at least in principle. Let

$$M_{\alpha} M_{\beta} = \{ \sum s_1 f_1 s_j f_2 \dots s_q f_r \} \{ \sum s_u h_1 s_v h_2 \dots s_w h_t \} \quad (7.34)$$

and take all possible products i.e.

$$M_{\alpha} M_{\beta} = \sum_{\varepsilon \leq \tau} b_{\varepsilon} M_{\varepsilon} \quad (7.35)$$

where the  $\epsilon$  are not necessarily distinct partitions. Adding together all  $b_\epsilon$  for the same partition will give the  $e_{\alpha\beta}^\delta$ .

What are the  $b_\epsilon$ ?

**THEOREM 7.3**

$$\text{Let } \alpha = (f_1 \dots f_r) = (1^{\varphi_1} 2^{\varphi_2} \dots)$$

$$\beta = (h_1 \dots h_t) = (1^{\psi_1} 2^{\psi_2} \dots)$$

$$\epsilon = (l_1 \dots l_n) = (1^{\lambda_1} 2^{\lambda_2} \dots)$$

where  $M_\epsilon$  is a possible product, then

$$b_\epsilon = \frac{\lambda_1! \lambda_2! \dots}{\varphi_1! \varphi_2! \dots \psi_1! \psi_2! \dots} \quad (7.36)$$

**REMARK**

As an example

$$\begin{aligned} (211)(11) & \stackrel{(7.35)}{=} \frac{1}{4}(321) + \frac{1}{4}(321) + \frac{1}{4}(312) + \frac{1}{4}(312) \\ & \quad + \frac{6}{4}(222) + \frac{6}{4}(222) + \frac{6}{4}(3111) + \frac{4}{4}(2211) \\ & \quad + \frac{4}{4}(2121) + \frac{6}{4}(3111) + \frac{4}{4}(2211) + \frac{4}{4}(2121) + \frac{24}{4}(21111) \\ & \stackrel{(7.29)}{=} (321) + 3(3111) + 3(222) + 4(2211) + 6(21111). \end{aligned}$$

**Proof**

finally a proof of (7.36) when the product term of (7.34) has the form

$$s_1^{f_1} \dots s_q^{f_q+h_u} \dots s_v^{f_v+h_w} \dots s_r^{f_r} s_x^{h_1} \dots s_z^{h_t}.$$

There are two cases

1.  $f_q = f_v = i$ .

With  $q, v, x \dots z$  fixed, the number of possible terms is

$$\frac{[m-t]_{r-2}}{\varphi_1! \dots (\varphi_1-2)! \dots}$$

Now  $s_q, s_v$  can be associated with  $f_q, f_v$  in  $\frac{1}{\varphi_1(\varphi_1-1)}$  ways. The number of ways the indices  $q, v, x, \dots, z$  can be chosen is

$$\frac{[m]_t}{\psi_1! \psi_2! \dots} \quad (7.37)$$

Thus the total number of terms is

$$\frac{[m]_{r+t-2}}{\varphi_1! \varphi_2! \dots \psi_1! \psi_2! \dots} \quad (7.38)$$

Let  $\varepsilon = (f_1 \dots f_q + h_u \dots f_v + h_w \dots f_r, h_1 \dots h_t) = (1^{\lambda_1} 2^{\lambda_2} \dots)$

and the associated msf has total number of terms

$$\frac{[m]_{r+t-2}}{\lambda_1! \lambda_2! \dots} \quad (7.39)$$

Then  $b_\varepsilon = \frac{(7.38)}{(7.39)}$  as required.

2.  $f_q = i \quad f_v = j$ .

With  $q, v, x, \dots, z$  fixed, the number of terms is

$$\frac{[m-t]_{r-2}}{\varphi_1! \dots (\varphi_1-1)! \dots (\varphi_j-1)! \dots}$$

Now  $s_q$  can be associated with  $f_q$  in  $\frac{1}{\varphi_1}$  ways,

$s_v$  can be associated with  $f_v$  in  $\frac{1}{\varphi_j}$  ways,

and the number of ways  $q, v, x, \dots, z$  can be chosen is still given by (7.37). The rest of the proof is the same as for case 1.

In the particular case  $t=1$ , the formulae agree with those for  $c_q$  and  $c_0$ .

The coefficients  $g_{\nu\mu}^{\kappa}$  have already been tabled for  $k = 1, 2, \dots, 7$  by KHATRI and PILLAI [25]. Their methods were based on the expansion of the zonal polynomials in terms of the elementary symmetric functions and the power sums. The limiting factor in this approach is the comparative difficulty of expressing the zonal polynomials in terms of these functions versus their expression in msf's.

### 7.6 Summation identities for $\binom{\kappa}{\nu}$ and $g_{\nu\mu}^{\kappa}$ .

This chapter is concluded with some formulae that are useful in checking that the values for  $\binom{\kappa}{\nu}$  and  $g_{\nu\mu}^{\kappa}$  are correct. One such formula (7.26) has already been given. All results are obtained by using identities similar to (7.23) and multiplying out. Coefficients of  $C_{\kappa}(S)$  are then equated. Throughout this section  $k, r, s, \kappa, \nu, \mu$  are as defined for (7.21). The matrix  $S$  is  $m \times m$  positive definite.

#### IDENTITY 1

$$\text{etr}[(x+y)S] = \text{etr}(xS)\text{etr}(yS) \quad (7.40)$$

#### LEMMA 7.4

$$(x+y)^k = \sum_{r+s=k} x^r y^s \binom{k}{r}_{\nu, \mu} g_{\nu\mu}^{\kappa} \quad (7.41)$$



Proof

Expand the term on the left hand side of (7.40) in a zonal series. Expand the terms on the right hand side similarly and take their Cauchy product. Equate the coefficients of  $C_k(S)/k!$ . Q.E.D.

## COROLLARY 1

$$1 = \sum_{\nu, \mu} g_{\nu\mu}^k \quad \text{for } r, s \text{ fixed.} \quad (7.42)$$

Proof

Set  $y=1$  in (7.41).

$$(1+x)^k = \sum_{r=0}^k \binom{k}{r} x^r = \sum_{r=0}^k \binom{k}{r} x^r \sum_{\nu, \mu} g_{\nu\mu}^k. \quad \text{Q.E.D.}$$

## COROLLARY 2

$$2^k = \sum_{r+s=k} \binom{k}{r}_{\nu, \mu} \sum_{\nu, \mu} g_{\nu\mu}^k. \quad (7.43)$$

Proof

Set  $x=y=1$  in (7.41). Q.E.D.

Many other formulae can be easily established.

These are perhaps mainly useful for checking the tables of  $g_{\nu\mu}^k$ .

## IDENTITY 2

$$\det(I-S)^{-a-b} = \det(I-S)^{-a} \det(I-S)^{-b} \quad (7.44)$$

a, b real

or in hypergeometric function notation

$${}_1F_0(a+b; S) = {}_1F_0(a; S) {}_1F_0(b; S). \quad (7.45)$$

LEMMA 7.5

$$(a+b)_\kappa = \sum_{r+s=\kappa} \binom{\kappa}{r} \sum_{\nu, \mu} (a)_\nu (b)_\mu g_{\nu\mu}^\kappa. \quad (7.46)$$

Proof

Expand both sides of (7.45) in zonal series, perform the Cauchy product and equate coefficients. Q.E.D.

For fixed  $\kappa$ , various values of  $a$  and  $b$  may be chosen to generate a set of simultaneous linear equations for the  $g_{\nu\mu}^\kappa$ . All coefficients can be chosen as rational by taking  $a, b$  rational. Thus the  $g_{\nu\mu}^\kappa$  are rational.

IDENTITY 3

JAMES [21] lists the KUMMER relation (equation (51))

$${}_1F_1(a; b; S) = \text{etr}(S) {}_1F_1(b-a; b; -S). \quad (7.47)$$

LEMMA 7.6

$$\frac{(a)_\kappa}{(b)_\kappa} = \sum_{s=0}^{\kappa} (-1)^s \binom{\kappa}{s} \sum_{\nu, \mu} \frac{(b-a)_\mu}{(b)_\mu} g_{\nu\mu}^\kappa. \quad (7.48)$$

Proof

Expand in zonal series, etc. Q.E.D.

COROLLARY

$$\frac{(a)_\kappa}{(b)_\kappa} = \sum_{s=0}^{\kappa} (-1)^s \sum_{\mu} \frac{(b-a)_\mu}{(b)_\mu} \binom{\kappa}{\mu}. \quad (7.49)$$

Proof

Rearrange (7.48) as

$$\frac{(a)_\kappa}{(b)_\kappa} = \sum_{s=0}^{\kappa} (-1)^s \sum_{\mu} \frac{(b-a)_\mu}{(b)_\mu} \binom{\kappa}{\mu} \sum_{\nu} g_{\nu\mu}^\kappa$$

and apply (7.22). Q.E.D.

Both (7.48) and (7.49) could be used to give systems of simultaneous linear equations for  $g_{\nu\mu}^\kappa$  and  $\binom{\kappa}{\mu}$ .

CHAPTER 8NUMERICAL EVALUATION8.1 Introduction

It now remains to consider the arithmetic worth of the various formulae for the numerical calculation of the one and two argument Bessel functions. The evaluations are over three ranges, one each for small, medium and large values of the latent roots. A section is devoted to each range of values and within each section both the one and two argument functions are considered.

Each section begins with an outline of the formulae used and this is followed by the results obtained when a few specific values are input to computer programmes written to perform the evaluation.

Results are good for very small and very large values. The limited results obtained for some medium values are encouraging but inconclusive in the case of the single Laguerre expansion. Results for the double Laguerre expansion are rather discouraging. However an extensive computer evaluation programme would be needed to verify these assertions.

The value  $n=10$  was used in all evaluations.

8.2 Small latent roots - zonal series

Direct summation of the zonal series is the method to be used when the latent roots are all small. Both the

one and two argument Bessel functions can be evaluated using the same computer programme by making use of the identity (1.17). That is

$${}_0F_1^{(m)}\left(\frac{1}{2}n; R, S\right) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \sum_{\kappa} \frac{C_{\kappa}(R)C_{\kappa}(S)}{\left(\frac{1}{2}n\right)_{\kappa} k! C_{\kappa}(I)} \quad (8.1)$$

and

$${}_0F_1\left(\frac{1}{2}n; R\right) = {}_0F_1^{(m)}\left(\frac{1}{2}n; R, I\right). \quad (8.2)$$

It was decided to restrict the evaluations to the cases  $m=2$  and  $m=3$ .

One argument matrix:

	R		value	sig. figs.
$m=2$	2	1	1.7961424950	11
	4	2	3.14383941	9
	8	4	9.034	4
	16	8	61.4	3
$m=3$	3	2 1	3.202536	7
	6	4 2	9.624	4
	12	8 4	74.5	3

Two argument matrices:

	R		S		value	sig. figs.
$m=2$	2	1	2	1	2.38036499	9
	4	2	4	2	23.94	4
	8	4	8	4	$2 \times 10^4$	1
	16	8	16	8	-	none
$m=3$	3	2 1	3	2 1	9.5360	5
	6	4 2	6	4 2	250	2
	12	8 4	12	8 4	-	none

It is clear that very good accuracy is obtainable for latent roots with values less than 1. For one argument matrix about 4 significant figure accuracy is obtainable if the leading latent root is less than about 8 while for two argument matrices, to obtain the same accuracy the leading latent root should be less than 4 (only for  $n=10$ ).

### 8.3 Medium value latent roots - Laguerre series

First the single Laguerre series. Substituting for  $L_k^a(S)$  using (6.11), noting that  $p = \frac{1}{2}(m+1)$  and using the scaled zonal polynomials  $C_k^*(S)$  defined by

$$C_k^*(S) = \frac{C_k(S)}{C_k(I)} = \frac{Z_k(S)}{Z_k(I)} \quad (8.3)$$

the equation (6.19) becomes

$${}_0F_1^{(m)}(a+p; S, Z) =$$

$$\text{etr}(Z) \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^k}{k!} \sum_{\kappa} C_{\kappa}(Z) \sum_{n=0}^k (-1)^n \sum_{\nu} \binom{\kappa}{\nu} \frac{C_{\nu}^*(S)}{(a+p)_{\nu}}. \quad (8.4)$$

Setting  $a+p = \frac{1}{2}n$ , this is evaluated in the form

$${}_0F_1^{(m)}\left(\frac{1}{2}n; S, Z\right) = \text{etr}(Z) \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^k}{k!} \sum_{\kappa} C_{\kappa}(Z) A_{\kappa}(S) \quad (8.5)$$

where

$$A_{\kappa}(S) = \sum_{n=0}^k (-1)^n \sum_{\nu} \binom{\kappa}{\nu} \frac{C_{\nu}^*(S)}{\left(\frac{1}{2}n\right)_{\nu}}. \quad (8.6)$$

As a test, values were chosen for which the zonal series converged to an answer after summing all terms to  $k=9$ . For  $n=10$ ,  $m=2$ ,  $S=\text{diag}(7.5, 2.5)$ ,  $Z=\text{diag}(5, 0.5)$  a

value of 108 (correct to 3 significant figures) was obtained. Using these values in the Laguerre series (8.5) no satisfactory results were obtained while summing to  $k=9$ .

By introducing a scaling factor  $c \neq 0$  considerable improvement is possible. We have the identity

$${}_0F_1^{(m)}\left(\frac{1}{2}n; cR, c^{-1}S\right) = {}_0F_1^{(m)}\left(\frac{1}{2}n; R, S\right) \quad (8.7)$$

which follows easily from the fact that

$$C_K(cR) = c^K C_K(R). \quad (8.8)$$

Thus from (8.7), (8.5) becomes

$$\begin{aligned} {}_0F_1^{(m)}\left(\frac{1}{2}n; S, Z\right) &= {}_0F_1^{(m)}\left(\frac{1}{2}n; cS, c^{-1}Z\right) \\ &= \text{etr}(c^{-1}Z) \sum_k \frac{(-1)^k}{k!} \sum_K C_K(Z) A_K(cS) c^{-k} \end{aligned} \quad (8.9)$$

and clearly from (8.6)

$$A_K(cS) \neq c^K A_K(S).$$

Summing the series (8.9) using the above values and  $c=10$  also gave 108. This indicates that it may be possible to obtain improved convergence by a suitable choice of a scaling factor. This introduction of an extra parameter is not possible in (8.1) as

$$C_K(cR)C_K(c^{-1}S) = C_K(R)C_K(S)$$

and the effect is lost unlike the case (8.9).

Similar results can be obtained for the one matrix case by setting

$${}_0F_1\left(\frac{1}{2}n; R\right) = {}_0F_1^{(m)}\left(\frac{1}{2}n; cR, c^{-1}I\right). \quad (8.10)$$

As already stated no sensible results were obtained for the double Laguerre series even with the introduction

of a scale factor. A far more extensive study would be necessary however to verify this as well as to confirm and perhaps improve on results obtained from (8.9).

#### 8.4 Large latent roots - asymptotic formulae

The asymptotic formula used for the one argument matrix case is, from (4.22) and (4.19)

$${}_0F_1\left(\frac{1}{2}n; \frac{1}{2}XX'\right) = \frac{k_1 \text{etr}(A)}{\prod_{1 < j} (a_1 + a_j)^{\frac{1}{2}} \det A^{\frac{1}{2}(n-m)}} G(A) \quad (8.11)$$

where  $k_1$  is given in (4.22) and

$$G(A) = 1 - \Lambda_1 \sum_{i=1}^m \frac{1}{a_i} - \Lambda_2 \sum_{1 < j} \frac{1}{a_1 + a_j} + o\left(\frac{1}{a}\right) \quad (8.12)$$

where

$$\Lambda_1 = \frac{1}{8}(n-3)(n-m) \quad \Lambda_2 = \frac{1}{12}(m-2).$$

For two argument matrices, THEOREM 2.4 gives

$${}_0F_1^{(m)}\left(\frac{1}{2}n; \frac{1}{2}\Omega, W\right) = k_2 \frac{\text{etr}(AB)}{\prod_{1 < j} c_{1j}^{\frac{1}{2}} \det(AB)^{\frac{1}{2}(n-m)}} G(A, B) \quad (8.13)$$

where  $k_2$  is given in (2.58) and

$$G(A, B) = 1 - \Lambda_1 \sum_{i=1}^m \frac{1}{a_i b_i} - 2\Lambda_2 \sum_{i \neq j} \frac{a_i b_i}{c_{1j}} + o\left(\frac{1}{a^2}\right). \quad (8.14)$$

A simple lower bound on the values of  $a_i$  for (8.11) and of  $a_i, b_i$  for (8.13) can be obtained simply. For two matrices first. Assuming the  $a_i, b_i$  are large and well spaced, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
c_{ij} &= (a_i^2 - a_j^2)(b_i^2 - b_j^2) \\
&= a_i^2 b_i^2 \left(1 - \frac{a_j^2}{a_i^2}\right) \left(1 - \frac{b_j^2}{b_i^2}\right) \\
&\approx a_i^2 b_i^2
\end{aligned}$$

and

$$\frac{a_i b_i}{c_{ij}} \approx \frac{1}{a_i b_i} \quad (8.15)$$

Also since the  $a_i$  and  $b_i$  are ordered in a decreasing sequence

$$\frac{1}{a_m b_m} \geq \frac{1}{a_i b_i} \quad i = 1, 2, \dots, m. \quad (8.16)$$

Hence since the Bessel function must be positive we would like to have

$$\Lambda_1 \sum_{i=1}^m \frac{1}{a_i b_i} + 2\Lambda_2 \sum_{i \neq j} \frac{a_i b_i}{c_{ij}} < 1$$

and using (8.15) and (8.16) this becomes

$$\frac{1}{a_m b_m} (\Lambda_1 m + 2\Lambda_2 m(m-1)) < 1.$$

The solution is

$$a_m b_m > \frac{1}{8}(n-3)(n-m)m + \frac{1}{8}m(m-1)(m-2). \quad (8.17)$$

For  $m=2, n=10$  this gives

$$a_m b_m > 14, \quad \text{i.e.} \quad a_m, b_m = 4$$

and for  $m=3, n=10$

$$a_m b_m > 19, \quad \text{i.e.} \quad a_m = 5, b_m = 4.$$

A programme was written to calculate the first four correction terms for  $G(A, B) \approx 1 - T_1 - T_2 + T_3 + T_4$ .



	$a_1$	$b_1$	$T_1$	$T_2$	$T_3$	$T_4$
$m=2$	8, 4	8, 4	0.54	0	0	.09
	16, 8	16, 8	0.13	0	0	.005
	24, 12	24, 12	0.009	0	0	.0025
$m=3$	15, 10, 5	12, 8, 4	0.41	0.01	.004	.046

Thus (8.17) provides an adequate lower bound when the higher values have the form  $a_i = (m-i+1)a_m$   $i = 1, 2, \dots, m-1$ .

Also for one argument matrix we arrive at the bound

$$a_m > \frac{1}{8}(n-3)(n-m)m + \frac{1}{24}m(m-1)(m-2). \quad (8.18)$$

For  $m=2$ ,  $n=10$ ,  $a_m > 14$  and for  $m=3$ ,  $n=10$ ,  $a_m > 19$ .

Similarly writing  $G(A) \simeq 1 - T_1 - T_2 + T_3 + T_4$ .

	$a_1$	$T_1$	$T_2$	$T_3$	$T_4$
$m=2$	30, 15	0.7	0	0.12	0.14
	60, 30	0.35	0	.03	.03
	90, 30	0.31	0	.03	.02
$m=3$	60, 40, 20	0.56	.003	.06	.12
	90, 60, 30	0.37	.002	.03	.05
	120, 80, 40	0.28	.001	.01	.03

Thus (8.18) also provides a lower bound on the  $a_1$  in the sense that if  $a_m$  does not satisfy it, absurd values are certain to result.

In most cases  $1 - T_1 - T_2$  will lead to an approximation with at least 2 significant figures, however much higher values of the latent roots are necessary for the

leading terms themselves to provide an adequate approximation to the true value.

### 8.5 Concluding remarks

Excellent results are obtained for small and large values of the latent roots. It appears though that much work is necessary to produce conclusive results on the worth of introducing a scale factor in the single Laguerre expansion and on the double Laguerre expansion.

Another interesting possibility is that the asymptotic series of Chapter 5 may produce better results for small values of the latent roots. The removal of the term  $e^{2S}$  may well yield more rapid convergence than the zonal series. Similarly, the Laguerre series too may very well be more rapidly convergent for certain small values of the latent roots. Certainly much theoretical and numerical work remains to be done.

APPENDIX 1A.1.1 Calculation of the  $d_k$ 

The coefficients  $d_k$  are related to the  $c_k$  by (2.20) and these can be evaluated from (2.17). From the formula of CONSTANTINE [7] equation (31)

$$\begin{aligned} \det(I - \frac{1}{2}U)^{\frac{1}{2}(n-2m-1)} &= {}_1F_0(-\frac{1}{2}(n-2m-1); \frac{1}{2}U) \quad (\text{A.1.1}) \\ &= \sum_{k, K} (-\frac{1}{2}(n-2m-1))_K \frac{C_K(\frac{1}{2}U)}{K!}. \end{aligned}$$

Also  $\prod_{i < j} (1 - \frac{u_i + u_j}{2})$  is a symmetric function of the  $u_1, \dots, u_m$ .

Let  $a_i^*$  be the  $i^{\text{th}}$  elementary symmetric function of the  $u_i$ , then the product has the expansion

$$\prod_{i < j} (1 - \frac{u_i + u_j}{2}) = 1 + \gamma_1 a_1^* + \gamma_2 a_2^* + \gamma_3 a_1^{*2} + o(u^2).$$

To evaluate the  $\gamma_1$ , consider the product in an array form as

$$\begin{aligned} &\left(1 - \frac{u_1 + u_2}{2}\right) \left(1 - \frac{u_1 + u_3}{2}\right) \left(1 - \frac{u_1 + u_4}{2}\right) \cdots \left(1 - \frac{u_1 + u_m}{2}\right) \\ &\quad \left(1 - \frac{u_2 + u_3}{2}\right) \left(1 - \frac{u_2 + u_4}{2}\right) \cdots \left(1 - \frac{u_2 + u_m}{2}\right) \\ &\quad \cdot \\ &\quad \cdot \\ &\quad \cdot \\ &\quad \left(1 - \frac{u_{m-1} + u_m}{2}\right). \end{aligned}$$

By the symmetry it is sufficient to count the number of times a typical term occurs in order to determine the  $\gamma_1$ .

To obtain a term of degree  $r$ , choose  $u_1$ 's from  $r$  terms and  $1$ 's from the remainder.

We will find the coefficients of  $u_1, u_1^2$  and  $u_1 u_2$ .  
For degree 1.

Note that  $u_1$  occurs in terms of row 1 only and there are  $m-1$  terms. The coefficient of  $\frac{1}{2}u_1$  is  $m-1$ .  
For degree 2.

Similarly  $u_1^2$  can be obtained from the terms of row 1 in  $\binom{m-1}{2}$  ways.

The product  $u_1 u_2$  is obtained in two ways. Choose  $u_2$  from the leading term and  $u_1$  from any other term in row 1. This can be done in  $m-2$  ways. Also choose  $u_1$  from any term in row 1 and  $u_2$  from any term in row 2. This can be done in  $(m-1)(m-2)$  ways. Combining, the coefficient of  $\frac{1}{2}u_1 u_2$  is  $m(m-2)$ .

To express the results in terms of the  $a_1^*$  remember that

$$\Sigma u_1^2 = a_1^{*2} - 2a_2^*$$

and the expansion from the array is

$$1 - \frac{1}{2}(m-1)a_1^* + \frac{1}{8}(m-1)(m-2)a_1^{*2} + \frac{1}{2}(m-2)a_2^* + o(u^2).$$

(A.1.2)

JAMES [21] gives tables of the zonal polynomials in terms of the elementary symmetric functions and these can be solved to express the  $a_1^*$  in terms of the  $C_K(U)$

$$\begin{aligned}
 a_1^{**} &= C_{(1)}(U) & a_1^{**2} &= C_{(2)}(U) + C_{(12)}(U) \\
 a_2^{**} &= & & \frac{3}{2}C_{(12)}(U).
 \end{aligned}$$

Substituting in (A.1.2) and collecting terms gives

$$\begin{aligned}
 1 - \frac{1}{2}(m-1)C_{(1)}(U) + \frac{1}{8}(m-1)(m-2)C_{(2)}(U) + \\
 \frac{1}{16}(m-2)(2m+1)C_{(12)}(U) + o(u^2). \quad (A.1.3)
 \end{aligned}$$

Multiplying the two series (A.1.1) and (A.1.3) and using the zonal product formula

$$[C_{(1)}(U)]^2 = a_1^{**2} = C_{(2)}(U) + C_{(12)}(U)$$

we get

$$\begin{aligned}
 1 - \frac{1}{2}(n-3)C_{(1)}(U) + \frac{1}{8}(n-3)(n-5)C_{(2)}(U) + \\
 \frac{1}{8}n(n-5)C_{(12)}(U) + o(u^2). \quad (A.1.4)
 \end{aligned}$$

As a check none of the  $c_k$  coefficients depend on  $m$ .

#### A.1.2 The evaluation of (2.42)

There are three types of integral involved. All can be evaluated using standard bivariate normal integrals.

##### LEMMA A.1.1

Let  $P, Q$  be  $2 \times 2$  symmetric matrices and  $\underline{s} = (s_1, s_2)'$ . Then if  $Q$  is positive definite

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \exp(-\frac{1}{2}\underline{s}'Q\underline{s}) d\underline{s} = \frac{2\pi}{\det Q^{\frac{1}{2}}} \quad (A.1.5)$$

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \underline{s}'P\underline{s} \exp(-\frac{1}{2}\underline{s}'Q\underline{s}) d\underline{s} = \frac{2\pi}{\det Q^{\frac{1}{2}}} \text{tr}(Q^{-1}P) \quad (A.1.6)$$

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \underline{s}'\underline{s} \exp(-\frac{1}{2}\underline{s}'Q\underline{s}) d\underline{s} = \frac{2\pi}{\det Q^{\frac{1}{2}}} \text{tr}(Q^{-1}). \quad (A.1.7)$$

((A.1.7) is of course the particular case of (A.1.6) with  $P = I_2$ .)

Considering (2.42) we have

$$c_{1j} = \det Q_{1j} = (a_1^2 - a_j^2)(b_1^2 - b_j^2) > 0$$

and the leading principal minor is  $a_1 b_1 + a_j b_j > 0$ , hence  $Q_{1j}$  is positive definite. Thus

$$\begin{aligned} K(A, B) &= \prod_{i < j} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \int \exp(-\frac{1}{2} \underline{s}'_{1j} Q_{1j} \underline{s}_{1j}) d\underline{s}_{1j} \quad (A.1.8) \\ &= \frac{(2\pi)^{\frac{1}{2}m(m-1)}}{\prod_{i < j} c_{1j}^{\frac{1}{2}}} \cdot \end{aligned}$$

(A.1.5)

Also to calculate the terms required for (2.47)

$$\begin{aligned} (1 + \varphi(S, T; A, B)) J(S) J(T) &= (1 - d_1 (\sum_1 \alpha_1 \beta_1 - \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i < j} \underline{s}'_{1j} P_{1j} \underline{s}_{1j} + o(s^2)) + \dots) \\ &\quad \times (1 - \frac{1}{1^2} (m-2) \sum_{i < j} \underline{s}'_{1j} \underline{s}_{1j} + o(s^2)) \end{aligned}$$

(A.1.9)

where  $d_1 = \frac{1}{8}(n-3)(n-m)$ . The substitution of (A.1.9) in (2.40) gives

$$\begin{aligned} g(A, B) &= \text{etr}(AB) \{ K(A, B) - d_1 \sum \alpha_1 \beta_1 K(A, B) + \frac{1}{2} d_1 L_1(A, B) \\ &\quad - \frac{1}{1^2} (m-2) L_2(A, B) + \frac{1}{1^2} (m-2) d_1 \sum \alpha_1 \beta_1 L_2(A, B) + \dots \} \end{aligned}$$

(A.1.10)

where

$$\begin{aligned} L_1(A, B) &= \int \int \sum_{i < j} \underline{s}'_{1j} P_{1j} \underline{s}_{1j} \exp(-\frac{1}{2} \sum_{i < j} \underline{s}'_{1j} Q_{1j} \underline{s}_{1j}) d\underline{s}_{1j} \quad (A.1.11) \\ &= \frac{(2\pi)^{\frac{1}{2}m(m-1)}}{\prod_{i < j} c_{1j}^{\frac{1}{2}}} \sum_{i < j} \text{tr}(Q_{1j}^{-1} P_{1j}) \end{aligned}$$

(A.1.6)

and

$$L_2(A, B) = \int_{\mathcal{D}} \int_{\mathcal{D}} \prod_{i < j} s_{ij} \exp\left(-\frac{1}{2} \sum_{i < j} s_{ij} Q_{ij} s_{ij}\right) ds_{ij} \quad (\text{A.1.12})$$

$$(\text{A.1.7}) \quad = \frac{(2\pi)^{\frac{1}{2}m(m-1)}}{\prod_{i < j} c_{ij}^{\frac{1}{2}}} \sum_{i < j} \text{tr}(Q_{ij}^{-1}).$$

$$\text{Now } P_{ij} = \alpha_i \alpha_j \beta_i \beta_j Q_{ij} \text{ so } \text{tr}(Q_{ij}^{-1} P_{ij}) = 2\alpha_i \alpha_j \beta_i \beta_j$$

and

$$Q_{ij}^{-1} = \frac{1}{c_{ij}} \begin{bmatrix} a_i b_i + a_j b_j & -a_i b_j - a_j b_i \\ -a_i b_j - a_j b_i & a_i b_i + a_j b_j \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\text{giving } \text{tr}(Q_{ij}^{-1}) = \frac{2(a_i b_i + a_j b_j)}{c_{ij}}.$$

Substitution of these results in  $L_1$  and  $L_2$  and their substitution in (A.1.10) gives

$$\begin{aligned} g(A, B) &= \frac{(2\pi)^{\frac{1}{2}m(m-1)} \text{etr}(AB)}{\prod_{i < j} c_{ij}^{\frac{1}{2}}} \left\{ 1 - \frac{1}{8}(n-3)(n-m) \sum_{i=1}^m \frac{1}{a_i b_i} \right. \\ &+ \frac{1}{16}(n-3)(n-m) \sum_{i < j} \frac{1}{a_i b_i a_j b_j} - \frac{1}{8}(m-2) \sum_{i < j} \frac{a_i b_i + a_j b_j}{c_{ij}} \\ &\left. + \frac{1}{16}(n-3)(n-m)(m-2) \sum_{k=1}^m \frac{1}{a_k b_k} \sum_{i < j} \frac{a_i b_i + a_j b_j}{c_{ij}} + \dots \right\}. \end{aligned} \quad (\text{A.1.13})$$

To list the terms in increasing powers of  $\frac{1}{a_i b_i}$  note that

$$\frac{1}{c_{ij}} = \frac{1}{a_i^2 b_i^2 \left(1 - \frac{a_j^2}{a_i^2}\right) \left(1 - \frac{b_j^2}{b_i^2}\right)} > \frac{1}{a_i^2 b_i^2}.$$

Some rearrangements of terms then give the results (2.46) and (2.47).

### A.1.3 Further terms of the series

Putting  $R^{-1} = B^{-1}H_1'A^{-1}H_2'$  the next terms of  $F(H_1, H_2; A, B)$  are  $d_{(2)}C_{(2)}(R^{-1})$  and  $d_{(1^2)}C_{(1^2)}(R^{-1})$ . Expressing the zonal polynomials in terms of elementary symmetric functions gives

$$\begin{aligned} & \frac{1}{128}(n-3)(n-5)(n-m)(n-m+2)C_{(2)} + \frac{1}{128}n(n-5)(n-m)(n-m-1)C_{(1^2)} \\ &= \frac{1}{128}(n-3)(n-5)(n-m)(n-m+2)a_1^{*2} - \frac{1}{32}(n-5)(n-m)(m-2)a_2^*. \end{aligned} \tag{A.1.14}$$

Now  $a_1^{*2}$  can be found by squaring (2.44) and the second elementary symmetric function of the matrix  $R^{-1} = (\rho_{ij})$  can be found by taking the sum of the  $2 \times 2$  principal minors i.e.

$$\begin{aligned} \rho_{ij} &= \sum_{u=1}^m \beta_i h_{ui} \alpha_u k_{ju} \\ a_2^* &= \sum_{i < j} (\rho_{ii}\rho_{jj} - \rho_{ij}\rho_{ji}) \\ &= \sum_{i < j} \sum_{u,v=1}^m \alpha_u \alpha_v \beta_i \beta_j h_{ui} h_{vj} (k_{iu}k_{jv} - k_{ju}k_{iv}). \end{aligned} \tag{A.1.15}$$

On substitution for the  $h_{ij}, k_{ij}$  in terms of  $s_{ij}, t_{ij}$  if all four indices  $i, j, u, v$  are unequal then each term is clearly  $O(s^4)$  and will be disregarded.



Also  $i=j$  is impossible and  $u=v$  makes the term (...) of (A.1.15) zero. Only six combinations can possibly lead to a contribution. They are

1.  $i=u$   $j=v$
2.  $i=v$   $j=u$
3.  $i=u$
4.  $i=v$
5.  $j=u$
6.  $j=v$ .

Substitution in (2.40) and combination with the results (A.1.13) gives

$$\begin{aligned}
 G(A,B) = & 1 - \frac{1}{8}(m-2) \sum_{i \neq j} \frac{a_i b_i}{c_{ij}} - \frac{1}{8}(n-3)(n-m) \sum \frac{1}{a_i b_i} \\
 & + \frac{1}{48}(n-3)(n-m)(m-2) \left\{ \sum_{i \neq j} \frac{a_i b_i + a_j b_j}{a_i b_i c_{ij}} + \sum_{i \neq j \neq k} \frac{a_i b_i}{a_k b_k c_{ij}} \right\} \\
 & + \frac{1}{128}(n-3)(n-5)(n-m)(n-m+2) \sum \frac{1}{a_i^2 b_i^2} \\
 & + \frac{1}{128}(n-m)(n^3 - n^2 m + 2n^2 + 8m^2 - 10nm + 23n - 5m - 2) \sum_{i \neq j} \frac{1}{a_i b_i a_j b_j} + \dots
 \end{aligned}$$

(A.1.16)

APPENDIX 2

RAO [30] considers the case of the columns of  $M$  defining a  $k$  dimensional plane rather than a  $k$  dimensional subspace. He also assumes repeated sampling on each of  $n$  populations. The derivation of (3.23) that follows is a simplified version of the proof of result (8c.6.4) p 475.

First we need a LEMMA from [30]. Let  $A$   $m \times m$  symmetric have latent roots  $\lambda_1 \geq \lambda_2 \geq \dots \geq \lambda_m$  and corresponding latent vectors  $p_1, \dots, p_m$ .

LEMMA A.2.1 (1f.2.8)

Let  $x_1, \dots, x_k$  be mutually orthonormal  $m \times 1$  vectors.

Then

$$\sup_{x_1, \dots, x_k} \sum_{i=1}^k x_i' A x_i = \sum_{i=1}^k \lambda_i$$

and the supremum is attained when  $x_i = p_i$ ,  $i=1, \dots, k$ .

Now the likelihood function is, apart from a constant,

$$L(M) = \text{etr} \left[ -\frac{1}{2} \Sigma^{-1} (X-M)(X-M)' \right]$$

and the likelihood ratio is

$$\lambda = \frac{\sup_{H_0} L(M)}{\sup_{H_1} L(M)} .$$

Asymptotically

$$\chi^2 = -2 \log \lambda = -2 \left[ \sup_{H_0} \ln L - \sup_{H_1} \ln L \right]$$

and on  $H_1$ ,  $\hat{M} = X$  giving  $\ln L = 0$ . Thus we must find

$$\chi^2 = \inf_{H_0} \text{tr } \Sigma^{-1}(X-M)(X-M)' \quad (\text{A.2.1})$$

Make the substitutions  $Y = \Sigma^{-\frac{1}{2}}X$ ,  $N = \Sigma^{-\frac{1}{2}}M$  to give

$$\chi^2 = \inf_{H_0} \text{tr}(Y-N)(Y-N)' \quad (\text{A.2.2})$$

where  $N$  has rank  $k$  on  $H_0$ . Let  $Y = (y_1, \dots, y_n)$ ,  $N = (\eta_1, \dots, \eta_n)$  then (A.2.2) becomes

$$\chi^2 = \inf_{H_0} \sum_{i=1}^n (y_i - \eta_i)' (y_i - \eta_i). \quad (\text{A.2.3})$$

If  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_k$  form an orthonormal basis for the space spanned by the columns of  $N$ , then

$$\eta_i = \sum_{j=1}^k \beta_{ij} \alpha_j = A \beta_i$$

where  $A = (\alpha_1 \dots \alpha_k)$  and  $\beta_i' = (\beta_{i1} \dots \beta_{ik})$ . The  $i$ th term of the sum to be minimised in (A.2.3) has the form  $(y_i - A \beta_i)' (y_i - A \beta_i)$  and for fixed  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_k$ , this corresponds to the sum of squares to be minimised on the linear model  $E[y_i] = A \beta_i$ . By the usual theory, the residual sum of squares is (noting that  $A'A = I_k$ )  $y_i'y_i - y_i'AA'y_i$ . Thus we have to find

$$\min_{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_k} \left\{ \sum_{i=1}^n y_i'y_i - \sum_{i=1}^n y_i'AA'y_i \right\}$$

and since the first sum is a constant this reduces to finding

$$\max_{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_k} \sum_{i=1}^n y_i'AA'y_i.$$

Now

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{i=1}^n (A'y_i)'(A'y_i) &= \sum_{i=1}^n \sum_{j=1}^k (a_j'y_i)'(\alpha_j'y_i) \\ &= \sum_{j=1}^k \alpha_j' \left( \sum_{i=1}^n y_i y_i' \right) \alpha_j \end{aligned}$$

and by LEMMA A.2.1

$$\max_{\alpha_1 \dots \alpha_k} \sum_{j=1}^k \alpha_j' (YY') \alpha_j = w_1 + \dots + w_k \quad (\text{A.2.4})$$

where the  $w_1$  are the latent roots of

$$\det(YY' - wI) = \det(\Sigma^{-\frac{1}{2}}XX'\Sigma^{-\frac{1}{2}} - wI) = 0.$$

Also

$$\sum_{i=1}^n y_i' y_i = \sum_{i=1}^n \text{tr } y_i y_i' = \text{tr } YY' = w_1 + \dots + w_m. \quad (\text{A.2.5})$$

Combining (A.2.4) and (A.2.5) we have the result

THEOREM A.2.1

$$\chi^2 = \min_{H_0} \text{tr } \Sigma^{-1}(X-M)(X-M)' = w_{k+1} + \dots + w_m \quad (\text{A.2.6})$$

where the  $w_1$  are the latent roots of  $\det(XX' - w\Sigma) = 0$ .

APPENDIX 3CALCULATION OF THE COEFFICIENTS  $c_{k\tau}$ A.3.1 The programme

A FORTRAN computer program was written to perform the calculations outlined in section 7.2. The purpose was to calculate the coefficients  $c_{k\tau}$  for  $k \leq 13$ . These coefficients were written on to magnetic tape and used as input to computer programmes for summing zonal series and series of Laguerre polynomials.

A listing of the programme is given at the end of this Appendix and in the following sections important mathematical and practical features are discussed. Other features are explained by comments in the listing and by reference to the appropriate formulae.

A.3.2 The generation of partitions

It is preferable that the partitions of a given  $k$  be generated in decreasing order (section 1.4). The following algorithm is such that when given a partition it generates the one immediately below it. It is perhaps easiest understood in terms of a verbal flow chart.

Let  $\kappa = (k_1 \dots k_r)$  and its successor is  $\tau = (l_1 \dots l_s)$ . Both are partitions of  $k$  and all parts are non-zero. The algorithm is initialised by presetting the first partition

$$k_1 = k, \quad r = 1.$$

1. Input the current partition  $(k_1, \dots, k_r)$ .
2. If  $k_1 = 1$ , all partitions of  $k$  have been

generated. Stop. Otherwise go to step 3.

3. If  $k_r > 1$ , set  $s = r+1$ ,  $l_u = k_u$ ,  $u = 1, \dots, r-1$ ,  
 $l_r = k_r - 1$ ,  $l_{r+1} = 1$ . This is now the new partition  
 ready for use and storage. Afterwards return to  
step 1 with  $\tau$  as the current partition.
4. Otherwise, find  $i$  such that  $k_i > 1$ ,  $k_{i+1} = 1$ .
5. Set  $l_u = k_u$ ,  $u = 1, \dots, i-1$ ,  $l_i = k_i - 1$ .
6. The sum of the remaining  $k_u$ ,  $u = i+1, \dots, r$  is  $r-i$   
 so find  $s, \alpha$  such that
 
$$0 < \alpha = r-i+1-l_i(s-i-1) \leq l_i.$$
7. Set  $l_u = l_i$ ,  $u = i+1, \dots, s-1$ ,  $l_s = \alpha$ . Use and store  
 this new partition and return to step 1 with  $\tau$  as  
 the current partition.

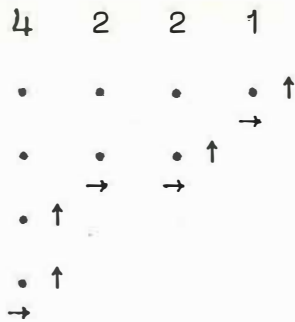
Relating this to the programme listing. The sub-routine KAPPA generates the successor of the supplied partition while PSET initialises the list by setting  $k_1 = k$ ,  $r = 1$ .

### A.3.3 Storage of partitions

A binary representation of the partition is generated. This minimises the storage needed to record them for later use in the program.

Consider the "Young" diagram for the partition

$42^21$ .



For convenience the diagram is written vertically instead of its usual horizontal configuration. Coding 1 for a shift right and 0 for a vertical shift, the partition  $42^21$  can be uniquely represented by the binary sequence 10011010. This binary sequence can then be stored in one computer word rather than using one word for each part of the partition. Incidentally the number of 1's equals the number of parts in the partition and the number of 0's is equal to the value of the largest part.

Another advantage of this binary representation is in improving search efficiency. The comparison of the actual partitions is not very convenient on a computer. This is replaced by a search of the list of binary representations (of a given  $k$  or set of  $k$ 's) to see if a given binary number is on it. Thus after the partition  $\mu$  is generated from  $\tau$  and the elements sorted into decreasing order, the **next step is to find its binary representation.** It is then a simple matter to see if  $\mu \leq \kappa$  by comparing its binary representation with the list of binary representations of all partitions of  $k$  from  $\kappa$  to  $\tau$ .

A call to the function IBIN generates the binary representation of the partition. The function is coded in COMPASS (the assembly language for the CDC6400) a more convenient language for this type of operation. Since all parts of a partition are non-zero the binary representation ends with at least one 0. The actual representation generated by IBIN has this final 0 eliminated. A reason for doing this is given in Appendix 4.

#### A.3.4 The calculation of $c(\kappa)$ and $\chi_{[2\kappa]}(1)$

The normalising factor  $c(\kappa)$ , for converting  $Z_\kappa$  to  $C_\kappa$ , and the character  $\chi_{[2\kappa]}(1)$  are calculated conveniently using formulae derived from JAMES [22] equation (3.2).

Let  $\kappa = (k_1, \dots, k_r)$  be a partition of  $k$  into  $r$  non-zero parts. Then from JAMES [21] equation (21)

$$c(\kappa) = 2^k k! \frac{\prod_{1 < j}^r (2k_1 - 2k_j - i + j)}{\prod_{i=1}^r (2k_1 + r - i)!}$$

$$\stackrel{(3.2)}{=} 2^k \prod_{i=1}^r \left( \prod_{j=1}^{k_1} \frac{A(i)}{(k_j + j)j} \prod_{j=1}^{r-1} \left( 1 - \frac{2k_{1+j}}{2k_1 + j} \right) \right) \quad (\text{A.3.1})$$

where  $A(i) = k_1 + \dots + k_{i-1}$ ,  $A(1) = 0$  and

$$\chi_{[2\kappa]}(1) = (2k)! \frac{\prod_{1 < j}^r (2k_1 - 2k_j - i + j)}{\prod_{i=1}^r (2k_1 + r - i)!}$$

$$= \prod_{i=1}^r \left( \prod_{j=1}^{k_1} \frac{(B(i) + 2j - 1)(B(i) + 2j)^{r-1}}{(k_1 + j)j} \prod_{j=1}^{r-1} \left( 1 - \frac{2k_{1+j}}{2k_1 + j} \right) \right)$$

(A.3.2)



where  $B(i) = 2(k_1 + \dots + k_{i-1})$ ,  $B(1) = 0$ .

The subroutine ZONCHAR is used to generate the coefficients  $c(\kappa)$  using (A.3.1), and these are then stored on magnetic tape along with the  $c_{\kappa\tau}$ . They are used in calculating the  $C_\kappa(S)$  from the  $Z_\kappa(S)$  when evaluating the generalised hypergeometric functions.

The formula (A.3.2) was used to write a separate computer programme to calculate the characters listed in TABLES 7.1 and 7.2.

THIS PROGRAM EVALUATES THE COEFFICIENTS C(KAPPA,NU) THAT ARISE WHEN THE ZONAL POLYNOMIALS Z(KAPPA) ARE EXPRESSED IN TERMS OF THE MONOMIAL SYMMETRIC FUNCTIONS M(NU). THE PROGRAM ALSO GENERATES AND STORES THE PARTITIONS KAPPA = (K1,K2,...,KR), THEIR BINARY REPRESENTATIONS AND THE CONVERSION FACTOR FROM Z(KAPPA) TO C(KAPPA)

```

PROGRAM NY(INPUT,OUTPUT,TAPE10)
COMMON KP(500,15),LGTH(500),CK(500),RK(500),IPOS,K,NPART
COMMON/A/KKK(20)
DIMENSION KQ(15),KC(15),KBS(15),CO(500)
DIMENSION ZONCH(500),NN(500)
DO1001I=1,20
1001 KKK(I)=2** (I-1)
PRINT*1
41 FORMAT(1H1)
M=20

```

OUTPUT OF DATA FOR K=1

```

NPART=1
NN(1)=1
ZONCH(1)=1
LL=1
KP(1,1)=1
WRITE(10,144)NPART
WRITE(10,142)NN(1),ZONCH(1),LL,KP(1,1)
CO=1.
WRITE(10,149)CO(1)
DO80K=2,13

```

GENERATE AN ORDERED LIST OF THE PARTITIONS OF K

```

IPOS=0
CALL PSET(K,KQ,M,MS,LTH)
GOTO1
3 CALL KAPPA(K,KQ,M,MS,LTH)
1 IPOS=IPOS+1
DO10I=1,LTH
10 KP(IPOS,I)=K*(I)
KP(IPOS,LTH+1)=0
LGTH(IPOS)=LTH

```

CALCULATE AND STORE C(KAPPA,KAPPA), RHO(KAPPA), NORMALISING FACTOR AND BINARY REPRESENTATION FOR EACH PARTITION KAPPA

```

CALL EAD
CALL RHO
CALL ZONCHAR(LTH,K,KQ,ZONCHR)
ZONCH(IPOS)=ZONCHR
NN(IPOS)=IHN(KQ,LTH)
IF(MS-1)3,2,3
2 NPART=IPOS

```

WRITE THE DATA ON MAGNETIC TAPE

```

WRITE(10,144)NPART
144 FORMAT(I6)
DO20I=1,NPART
LL=LGTH(I)
20 WRITE(10,142)NN(I),ZONCH(I),LL,(KP(I,J),J=1,LL)
142 FORMAT(06,E20,13,14I3)

```

STEP THROUGH THE PARTITIONS KAPPA ONE BY ONE

```

NPAR=NPART-1
DO70IZ=1,NPAR
CO(IZ)=CK(IZ)
LMT=LGTH(IZ)
DO71J=1,LMT
71 KBS(J)=KP(IZ,J)

```

FOR EACH KAPPA STEP THROUGH ALL TAU = (L1,L2,...,L5)  
PFLOW KAPPA

```

IZZ=IZ+1
DO30I=IZZ,NPART
N=0
SUM=0.
ML=LGTH(I)

```

FOR EACH TAU GENERATE ALL POSSIBLE

MU = (L)...LI+T...LI-T...LS)

```
MM=ML-1
D050IA=2*ML
ID=IA-1
D050IB=1,ID
MN=KP(I,IA)
D060IC=1,MN
D040J=1,ML
40 KC(J)=KP(I,J)
   KC(IB)=KC(IB)+IC
   KC(IA)=KC(IA)-IC
   KK=KC(IB)-KC(IA)
```

FOR EACH MU SORT THE ELEMENTS INTO DECREASING ORDER  
AND FIND THE BINARY REPRESENTATION

```
CALL SHORT(KC,ML)
IF (KC(ML).EQ.0)GOTO12
MLT=ML
GOTO1B
12 MLT=ML-1
1B NNN=IBIN(KC,MLT)
```

TEST IF THE SORTED MU IS ADMISSIBLE  
IF TRUE ADD APPROPRIATE TERM TO THE SUM AS PER (7.6)

```
IS=I-1
D073J=IZ.IS
IF (NNN-NN(J))73,3B,73
73 CONTINUE
GOTO60
3B SUM=SUM+KK*CO(J)
   N=N+1
60 CONTINUE
50 CONTINUE
IF (N)B1,82,81
82 CO(I)=0.
GOTO30
81 IF (ABS(SUM)-0.5)82,82,83
83 CO(I)=SUM/(RK(IZ)-RK(I))
30 CONTINUE
```

OUTPUT THE COEFFICIENTS ONTO MAGNETIC TAPE

```
WRITE(10,149)(CO(LL),LL=IZ,NPART)
149 FORMAT(9F15.1)
70 CONTINUE
WRITE(10,149)CK(NPART)
80 CONTINUE
STOP $ END
```

CALCULATES THE LEADING COEFFICIENT C(KAPPA,KAPPA) ACCORDING  
TO (7.5)

```
SUBROUTINE EAD
COMMON KP(500,15),LGTH(500),CK(500),RK(500),IPOS,K,NPART
PR=1
LTH=LGTH(IPOS)
D010I=1,LTH
KL=KP(IPOS,I)
LL=KL-KP(IPOS,I+1)
D010J=1,I
A=(I-J)/2.+(KP(IPOS,J)-KL)*n.5
10 PR=PR*COF(A,LL)
CK(IPOS)=PR*2.**K
RETURN $ END
```

CALCULATES THE  $(A)_K = A(A+1)\dots(A+K-1)$

```
FUNCTION COF(A,K)
C=A
II=1
3 IF (II-K)1,2,4
1 C=C*(A+II)
II=II+1
GOTO3
4 COF=C
RETURN
2 COF=C
RETURN $ END
```

CALCULATES THE RHO(KAPPA) ACCORDING TO (7.7)

```

SUBROUTINE PHO
COMMON KP(500,15),LGTH(500),CK(500),RK(500),IPOS,K,NPART
SUM=0
I=LGTH(IPOS)
DO 10 J=1,I
A=KP(IPOS,J)
10 SUM=SUM+A*(A-J)
RK(IPOS)=SUM
RETURN $ END
```

CALCULATES THE NORMALISING FACTOR FOR CONVERSION FROM Z(KAPPA) TO C(KAPPA) USING FORMULA (A.3.1)

```

SUBROUTINE ZONCHR(P,K,KAPPA,KAPK,Q)
INTEGER P,K,KAPPA,KAPK,Q
DIMENSION KAPPA(P)
REAL ZONCHR,PR
KAPK=0.
PR=1.
DO 10 I=1,P
KAPPAI=KAPPA(I)
DO 20 J=1,KAPPAI
PR=PR*FLOAT(KAPK+J)/(FLOAT(KAPPAI+J)*FLOAT(J))
20 CONTINUE
IF(I.EQ.P)1.2
2 Q=P-I
DO 30 J=1,Q
PR=PR*(1.-FLOAT(2*KAPPA(I+J))/FLOAT(2*KAPPAI+J))
30 CONTINUE
1 KAPK=KAPK+KAPPAI
10 CONTINUE
ZONCHR=2**K*PR
RETURN $ END
```

```

SUBROUTINE PSET(K,KP,M,MS,LGTH)
DIMENSION KP(1)
KP = K
10 DO 10 I=2,K
KP(I) = 0
MS = 0
LGTH = 1
RETURN
ENTRY KAPPA
IF(K.EQ.1) GO TO 37
MS = 0
9 N = 0
DO 11 KM = 1,K
J = K-KM+1
N = N + KP(J)
IF(KP(J).GT.1) GO TO 36
11 CONTINUE
37 CONTINUE
MS = 1
LGTH = K
RETURN
36 CONTINUE
3 IF(KP(J+1).GT.0) GO TO 4
KP(J) = KP(J) - 1
KP(J+1) = 1
LGTH = J+1
IF(LGTH.GT.M) GO TO 9
IF(KP.EQ.1) GO TO 37
RETURN
4 KP(J) = LD = KP(J)-1
MM = J
6 MM = MM + 1
N = N-LD
IF(N.LT.0) GO TO 5
KP(MM) = LD
GO TO 6
5 N = N+LD
MM = MM - 1
KP(MM) = N
LGTH = MM
IF(N.EQ.0) LGTH = LGTH - 1
MM = MM + 1
GO 27 IM = MM*K
27 KP(IM) = 0
IF(LGTH.GT.M) GO TO 9
IF(KP.EQ.1) GO TO 37
RETURN
END
```

CALCULATES THE BINARY REPRESENTATION OF A PARTITION

	IDENT	IRIN
	ENTRY	IRIN
	USE	707
KK	BSS	20
	USE	*
IRIN	BSS	1
	SB4	1
	SA1	R2
	SB2	X1+R1
	SA2	R2-R4
	SA1	X2+KK-1
ST	SB2	R2-R4
	E0	R1.R2.RF
	SA3	R2-R4
	IX2	X2+X3
	SA3	R2
	IX2	X2-X3
	SX2	X2+R4
	SA3	X2+KK-1
	IX1	X1+X3
	JP	ST
RF	RX6	X1
	JP	IRIN

CALCULATES THE PARTITION FROM ITS BINARY REPRESENTATION

	ENTRY	NIRI
NIRI	BSS	1
	SB4	1
	SA1	R1
	SB1	X1
	SA2	R2
	SX6	R4
	SX3	R4
LI	ZR	R1+EM
	SB1	R1-R4
L	RX4	X2+Y3
	ZR	X4+JU
	SA6	R3+R1
	LX3	1
	JP	LI
JU	SX6	X2+R4
	LX3	1
	JP	L
EM	SA6	R3
	JP	NIRI
	END	

SORTS THE ELEMENTS 1)...LI+T...LJ-T...LS OF MU INTO DECREASING ORDER

	IDENT	SHORT
	ENTRY	SHORT
SHORT	BSS	1
	SA1	R2
	SB2	X1-1
EL	SB3	R0
	SB4	R0
ES	E0	R2.R3.RF
	SA2	R1+R3
	SA3	A2+1
	IX4	X2-X3
	PL	X4+EK
	RX6	X2
	RX7	X3
	SA6	A3
	SA7	A2
	SB4	R4+1
EK	SB3	R3+1
	JP	ES
EP	ZR	R4.SHORT
	SB2	R2-1
	ZR	R2.SHORT
	JP	EL
	END	

APPENDIX 4CALCULATION OF THE  $g_{\nu\mu}^k$  AND  $\binom{k}{\nu}$ A.4.1 The programme

The FORTRAN programme listed at the end of this Appendix is designed to generate the coefficients  $g_{\nu\mu}^k$  and  $\binom{k}{\nu}$  for  $k \leq 9$  using the formulae of sections 7.4 and 7.5. Only the coefficients  $\binom{k}{\nu}$  are retained on magnetic tape. These are used in the calculation of the Laguerre polynomials. The coefficients  $g_{\nu\mu}^k$  are not saved as they are only used here to calculate the  $\binom{k}{\nu}$  and as indicated in section 7.5 they have already been tabled for  $k \leq 7$ . Basically the programme is designed to calculate the  $g_{\nu\mu}^k$  and it is then a simple matter to selectively sum them to derive the  $\binom{k}{\nu}$ .

The evaluation of the  $b_e$  and an efficient method of storing them are discussed in the next two sections.

A.4.2 The product of msf's, the  $b_e$  and the  $e_{\alpha\beta}^\delta$ 

Let  $\alpha$  be a partition of  $r$  with  $m$  parts

$\beta$  be a partition of  $t$  with  $n$  parts

$\varepsilon$  be a partition of  $k$  with  $p$  parts

under the conditions  $k = r+s$ ,  $m \geq n$ ,  $m \leq p \leq m+n$ .

Let  $\alpha = (f_1, \dots, f_m)$ ,  $\beta = (h_1, \dots, h_n)$ ,  $\varepsilon = (l_1, \dots, l_p)$ . It is important that all parts be non-zero. Zero parts would lead to unwanted extra terms.

As for (7.34) and (7.35) the product of msf's is

$$M_\alpha M_\beta = \{ \sum s_1 f_1 s_j f_2 \dots s_q f_m \} \{ \sum s_u h_1 s_v h_2 \dots s_w h_n \} \quad (\text{A.4.1})$$

$$= \sum_{\varepsilon \leq \tau} b_\varepsilon M_\varepsilon \quad (\text{A.4.2})$$

where  $\tau = (f_1+h_1, f_2+h_2, \dots, f_n+h_n, f_{n+1}, \dots, f_m)$ . The msf's  $M_\varepsilon$  are formed by taking all possible products in (A.4.1).

At the  $i^{\text{th}}$  stage:

Select  $i$  elements from  $f_1, \dots, f_m$  to give the subset  $S_i(\alpha)$ .

Select  $i$  elements from  $h_1, \dots, h_n$  to give the subset  $S_i(\beta)$ .

Arrange the elements of  $S_i(\alpha)$  in some order and hold it fixed. Then permute the elements of  $S_i(\beta)$  in all possible ways and after each permutation add these elements to the corresponding ones of  $S_i(\alpha)$ . To each generated list append the  $m-i$  remaining elements of  $\alpha$  and  $n-i$  of  $\beta$  to form a partition  $\varepsilon$ . Each partition  $\varepsilon$  is associated with a possible msf  $M_\varepsilon$  from (A.4.1).

For example  $m = 5, n = 4, i = 3$ :

$$S_3(\alpha) = f_1, f_3, f_5$$

$$S_3(\beta) = h_1, h_2, h_4.$$

Two possible permutations of  $S_3(\beta)$  are

$$h_1, h_4, h_2 \quad \text{and} \quad h_2, h_1, h_4$$

to give

$$\varepsilon_1 = f_1+h_1, f_3+h_4, f_5+h_2, f_2, f_4, h_3$$

$$\varepsilon_2 = f_1+h_2, f_3+h_1, f_5+h_4, f_2, f_4, h_3.$$

Summarising, for fixed  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  we may have

$i = 0, 1, \dots, n$ . For each  $i$  we generate all  $i$  element

subsets  $S_1(\alpha)$  and for each  $S_1(\alpha)$  we generate all possible  $i$  element subsets  $S_1(\beta)$ . For each pair of  $S_1(\alpha)$  and  $S_1(\beta)$  we generate all possible permutations of  $S_1(\beta)$  before adding it to  $S_1(\alpha)$ . The remaining  $m+n-2i$  elements of  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  are appended to generate an  $\varepsilon$ . Using (7.36) the  $b_\varepsilon$  is calculated.

After all acceptable combinations of  $S_1(\alpha)$  and  $S_1(\beta)$  are used we are left with the  $e_{\alpha\beta}^\delta$  for the product of  $M_\alpha$  and  $M_\beta$ .

The selection of all possible subsets  $S_1(\alpha)$  for a partition  $\alpha$  is done by the pair of subroutines SELSET and SELGET. The routine SELSET initialises by setting  $S_1(\alpha) = f_1, \dots, f_i$  while the routine SELGET generates a new  $S_1(\alpha)$  on each call. Similarly for all  $S_1(\beta)$  of  $\beta$ . An example suffices to illustrate the principle.

Set  $m = 5, i = 3$ .

SELSET  $f_1, f_2, f_3$

SELGET 1.  $f_1, f_2, f_4$

2.  $f_1, f_2, f_5$

3.  $f_1, f_3, f_4$

4.  $f_1, f_3, f_5$

etc....

The permutation of  $S_1(\beta)$  is performed by the pair of subroutines PERSET, PERGET. Subroutine PERSET initialises arrays and returns the identity permutation, while the routine PERGET generates a new permutation from the current



one using an algorithm given by LEHMER (p 23) in BECKENBACH [6].

#### A.4.3 Storing the $b_\epsilon$

Every time a new  $b_\epsilon$  is generated this must be added to the accumulated total associated with that partition. One method of storage is to convert  $\epsilon$  to its binary representation and use this to search a list of the binary representations of all partitions  $\kappa$  of  $k$  and then increment the associated coefficient. This is slow and inefficient as much searching is involved.

A much faster method is to use the binary representation of  $\epsilon$  as an index. For example:

partition	binary representation	index (base 10)
4	1000	8
31	1001	9
$2^2$	110	6
$21^2$	1011	11
$1^4$	1111	15

(the final 0 has been dropped as per Appendix 3).

Thus any  $b_{(4)}$  is added to storage location 8

any  $b_{(31)}$  is added to storage location 9

etc... .

As stated before each  $\kappa$  has a unique index. The largest index for  $\kappa \leq 9$  is 511 (corresponding to  $1^9$  having the binary representation 111111111). Only some of the storage locations are used for  $k \leq 9$ , but the increase

in speed of operation far outweighs the disadvantage of needing 511 storage locations reserved for the 97 partitions of  $k = 1, \dots, 9$ .

THIS PROGRAM CALCULATES THE ZONAL POLYNOMIAL PRODUCT AND  
 GENERALISED BINOMIAL COEFFICIENTS ALONG THE LINES OF  
 SECTIONS 7.4 AND 7.5  
 THE GENERALISED BINOMIAL COEFFICIENTS ARE STORED ON  
 MAGNETIC TAPE FOR FUTURE USE

```

PROGRAM AKL(INPUT,OUTPUT,TAPE10,TAPE20)
COMMON NN(140),LTH(140),COR(1460),C0(4032),KA(10),KR(10),KC(10),
*Z(42)
COMMON/STAF/KCC(10)
COMMON/STAPT/NP(11),NR(42),NRS(11)
DATA NH/0.1,3.6,10,15,21,28,36,45,55,66,78,91,105,120,136,153,
*171,190,210,231,253,276,300,325,351,378,406,435,465,495,528,561,
*595,630,666,703,741,780,820,861/
DATA NP/1,2,4,7,12,19,30,45,67,97,139/
DATA NRS/0.1,4,10,25,53,119,239,492,957,1860/
DATA KCC/0.2,4,30,77,198,435,968,1980,4032/
DIMENSION NPATR(142,2),N(202)
COMMON APR(8484)
DIMENSION LX(10),LY(10)
COMMON/FA/FAC(10)
COMMON/A/KK(20)
UO1001)=1.20
1001 KK(1)=2**(1-1)
FAC(1)=1, % FAC(2)=2, % FAC(3)=6, % FAC(4)=24, % FAC(5)=120,
FAC(6)=720, % FAC(7)=5040, % FAC(8)=40320, % FAC(9)=362880,
FAC(10)=3628800.
149 FORMAT(9F5.1)
144 FORMAT(I6)
142 FORMAT(O6,F20.13,I3)

```

INPUT THE DATA WRITTEN ON MAGNETIC TAPE BY THE PROGRAM  
 DESCRIBED IN APPENDIX 3  
 CALCULATE THE COEFFICIENTS A(KAPPA,TAU) OF (7.27)

```

IPOS=0
DO10IJK=1,10
READ(10,144)NPAPT
DO20J=1,NPART
IPOS=IPOS+1
20 READ(10,147)NN(IPOS),Z(J),LTH(IPOS)
II=NBS(IJK)
DO30I=1,NPART
READ(10,149)(C)(LL),LL=1,NPART)
DO40J=1,NPART
LL=II+1+NR(J)
40 COR(LL)=C0(J)*Z(I)
30 CONTINUE
10 CONTINUE
N(1)=0
DO99I=1,20)
99 N(I+1)=N(I)+42
PRINT41
41 FORMAT(1H1)
DO50I=2,10
IPR=0
DO61IXY7=1,8484
51 APR(IXY7)=0,
IX=NP(I)
IY=NP(I+1)-1
J=1
4 J=J-1
K=I-J
IXY=0
IF(J-K)52,2,3
2 IXY=1
3 IA=NP(J+1)-IP(I)
IB=NP(K+1)-IP(K)
IXY=IXY+1
DO60JA=1,12
GOTO(61,62),IXY
61 IYY=1
GOTO63
62 IYY=JA
63 OUAUJH=IYY,IK
II=NBS(J)
LLL=NRS(K)
MM=NBS(I)
JS=NP(J)+JA-1
JST=NP(J+1)-1
KS=NP(K)+JH-1
KST=NP(K+1)-1
IPR=IPR+1
NPATR(IPR,1)=MM(JS)
NPATR(IPR,2)=II(KST)
DO70MA=JS,JST
UO70MH=KST,IPR

```

SELECT A PAIR OF PARTITIONS

ALPHA A PARTITION OF R  
 BETA A PARTITION OF T

```

LA=LTH(MA)
LB=LTH(MB)
IF(LA-LB)68,69,69
68 CALL NIRI(LA,NN(MA),KP)
   CALL NIRI(LB,NN(MB),KA)
   LA=LB
   LB=LTH(MA)
   GOTO67
69 CALL NIRI(LA,NN(MA),KA)
   CALL NIRI(LB,NN(MB),KA)
67 MMA=MA-NP(I)+1
   MMR=MB-NP(K)+1
   LLA=I+JA+MH(MMA)
   LLB=LL+JR+MB(MMR)
   AC=COR(LLA)*COR(LLB)
   FACA=FWAC(KA,LA)*FRAC(KB,LB)
   FACH=AC/FACA
   DO110IL=1,LA
110 KC(IL)=KA(IL)
   DO120IL=1,LB
120 KC(LA+IL)=KB(IL)
   LAR=LA+LR
   CALL SHORT(KC,LAR)
   NNN=I+IN(KC,LAR)
   LL=INDEX(NNN,1)+N(IPR)
   APR(LL)=FRAC(KC,LAR)*FACH+APR(LL)
   DO130JJ=1,1H
   CALL SELSET(LY,JJ,MY,MS,LA)
   GOTO131
134 CALL SELGET(LY,JJ,MY,MS,LA)
   IF(MS)130,131,130
131 CALL SELSET(LY,JJ,MY,MS,LR)
   GOTO133
134 CALL SELGET(LY,JJ,MY,MS,LR)
   IF(MSY)134,133,134
133 IF(JJ-1)134,135,134
135 DO140IL=1,LA
140 KC(IL)=KA(IL)
   JJA=LY(I)
   JJR=LY(K)
   KC(JJA)=KC(JJA)+KH(JJR)
   JJC=LA
   DO150IL=1,LR
   IF(IL-JJA)151,150,151
151 JJC=JJC+1
   KC(JJC)=KB(IL)
150 CONTINUE
   CALL SHORT(KC,JJC)
   NNN=I+IN(KC,JJC)
   LL=INDEX(NNN,1)+N(IPR)
   APR(LL)=FRAC(KC,JJC)*FACH+APR(LL)
   GOTO134
136 CALL PERSET(LY,JJ,MSY)
   GOTO137
139 CALL PERGET(LY,JJ,MSX)
   IF(MSX)136,137,134
137 DO160IL=1,LA
160 KC(IL)=KA(IL)
   DO170IL=1,LL
   JJA=LY(IL)
   JJR=LY(IL)
170 KC(JJA)=KC(JJA)+KH(JJR)
   JJC=LA
   DO180IL=1,LR
   DO190ILL=1,LL
   IF(IL-LY(ILL))190,181,190
190 CONTINUE
   JJC=JJC+1
   KC(JJC)=KB(ILL)
181 CONTINUE
180 CONTINUE
   CALL SHORT(KC,JJC)
   NNN=I+IN(KC,JJC)
   LL=INDEX(NNN,1)+N(IPR)
   APR(LL)=FRAC(KC,JJC)*FACH+APR(LL)
   GOTO134
130 CONTINUE
70 CONTINUE
   NPART=NP(I+1)-NP(I)
   IM=N(IPR)
   NP&R=NP&R1-]
    
```

```

DO210MA=1.NPAR
MBX=MA+1
LL=IM+MA
LLX=MM+MA+NB(MA)
APR(LL)=ZR=APR(LL)/COR(LLX)
DO220MB=MRX.NPART
LL=IM+MR
LLX=MM+MA+NB(MR)
220 APR(LL)=APR(LL)-ZR+COR(LLX)
210 CONTINUE
LL=IM+NPART
LLX=MM+NPART+NB(NPART)
APR(LL)=APR(LL)/COR(LLX)
IMM=IM+NPART
IM=IM+1
DO230LL=IM,IMM
IF(ABS(APR(LL))-1.E-10)231,231,230
231 APR(LL)=0.
230 CONTINUE
60 CONTINUE
IF(J-K)52,52,4
52 Z=FAC(I)
IX=NP(I)
IY=NP(I+1)-1
NPART=IY-IX+1
II=I-1
MCAR=0
KCCC=KCC(I)
DO310IA=1,KCCC
310 CO(IA)=0.
DO320JJ=1,II
ZZ=Z/(FAC(JJ)*FAC(I-JJ))
IX=NP(JJ)
IY=NP(JJ+1)-1
DO330MA=IX,IY
NNN=NN(MA)
DO340MB=1,IPR
IF(NNN-NPART(MB,1))341,342,341
341 IF(NNN-NPART(MB,2))340,342,340
342 DO350MC=1,NPART
LL=N(MB)+MC
IF(ABS(APR(LL))-1.E-10)350,350,351
351 MCC=MCAR+MC
CO(MCC)=CO(MCC)+APR(LL)
350 CONTINUE
340 CONTINUE
DO360MC=1,NPART
MCC=MCAR+MC
360 CO(MCC)=CO(MCC)*ZZ
MCAR=MCAR+NPART
330 CONTINUE
320 CONTINUE
WRITE(20)(CO(LL),LL=1,KCCC)
PRINT241,(CO(LL),LL=1,KCCC)
241 FORMAT(X10F13.4)
50 CONTINUE
STOP % END

```

```

SUBROUTINE PEPSFT(I,N,MS)
DIMENSION D(10),E(10),A(10),L(10)
INTEGER A,0,E
MS=0
NN=N-1
DO10I=1,NN
D(I)=0
E(I)=1
A(I)=I+1
10 CONTINUE
7 RETURN
ENTRY PERGET
J=NN
8 A(J)=A(J)-E(J)
IF(A(J)-J-1)1,2,1
1 IF(A(J))3,2,3
3 I=J+1
K=A(J)
6 IF(I-NN)4,4,5
4 K=K+D(I)
I=I+1
GOTO6
5 IH=L(K)
L(K)=L(K+1)
L(K+1)=IH
GOTO7
2 E(J)=-E(J)
D(J)=1-D(J)
J=J-1
IF(J)9,9,4
9 MS=1
IH=L(2)
L(2)=L(1)
L(1)=IH
RETURN % END

```

```

SUBROUTINE SELSFT(L,T,M,MS,N)
DIMENSION L(11)
MS=0
L(T+1)=N+1
M=1
L(1)=1
3 IF(M-1)1,2,1
1 M=M+1
L(M)=L(M-1)+1
GOTO3
2 RETURN
ENTRY SELGFT
4 IF(L(M)+1-L(M+1))5,4,5
5 L(M)=L(M)+1
GOTO3
4 M=M-1
IF(M)6,7,6
7 MS=1
RETURN & END

```

CHECKS THE LIST OF BINARY REPRESENTATIONS OF PARTITIONS  
KAPPA AND RETURNS THE POSITION OF EPSILON OF IT

	IDENT	INDEX
	ENTRY	INDEX
	USE	//
NN	BSS	140
	USE	*
	USE	/START/
NP	BSS	11
NR	BSS	53
	USE	*
INDEX	BSS	1
	SA1	H1
	SA2	H2
	SA3	X2+NP-1
	SR2	X3+NR-2
	SR3	1
AG	SA2	H2+R3
	IX3	X1-X2
	ZR	X3-RM
	SR3	H3+1
	JP	AG
RM	SX6	H3
	JP	INDEX
	END	

CALCULATES  $FAC(PH1) * FAC(PH2) * \dots$  AS REQUIRED IN (7.36)

	IDENT	FRAC
	ENTRY	FRAC
	USE	/FA/
FAC	BSS	10
	USE	*
ONE	DATA	1.
FRAC	BSS	1
	SA1	ONE
	HX6	F1
	SB3	H0
	SA2	H2
	SR2	X2
FV	SR2	H2-1
	ZP	H2*FP
	SA1	H1+H2
	SA2	H1-1
	IX3	X1-X2
	ZP	X3*FL
	SA5	H3+FAC
	FX6	X5*X6
	SB3	H0
	JP	FV
FL	SR3	H3+1
	JP	FV
FR	SA5	H3+FAC
	FX6	X5*X6
	JP	FRAC
	END	

THIS PROGRAM ALSO CALLS IBIN AND SHORT  
THESE HAVE ALREADY BEEN LISTED

BIBLIOGRAPHY

1. G.A. ANDERSON: An asymptotic expansion for the distribution of the latent roots of the estimated covariance matrix, Ann. Math. Statist. 36 (1965), 1153-1173.
2. T.W. ANDERSON: The non-central Wishart distribution and certain problems of multivariate statistics, Ann. Math. Statist. 17 (1946), 409-431.
3. T.W. ANDERSON and M.A. GIRSHICK: Some extensions of the Wishart distribution, Ann. Math. Statist. 15 (1944), 345-357.
4. M.S. BARTLETT: Multivariate analysis (with discussion), J.R. Statist. Soc. (Suppl.) 2 (1947), 176-190.
5. M.S. BARTLETT: A note on the multiplying factors for various  $\chi^2$  approximations, J.R. Statist. Soc. B 16 (1954), 296-298.
6. EDWIN F. BECKENBACH: "Applied Combinatorial Mathematics", University of California Engineering and Physical Sciences Extension Series (1964), John Wiley and Sons, Inc.
7. A.G. CONSTANTINE: Some non-central distribution problems in multivariate analysis, Ann. Math. Statist. 34 (1963), 1270-1285.

8. A.G. CONSTANTINE: The distribution of Hotelling's generalised  $T_0^2$ , Ann. Math. Statist. 37 (1966), 215-225.
9. ARTHUR ERDELYI et al.: "Higher Transcendental Functions", McGraw Hill (1953), New York.
10. A. ERDELYI: "Asymptotic Expansions", Dover (1956), New York.
11. R.A. FISHER: The sampling distribution of some statistics obtained from non-linear equations", Ann. Eugenics 9 (1939), 238-249.
12. C.S. HERZ: Bessel functions of matrix argument, Ann. of Math. 65 (1955), 474-523.
13. P.L. HSU: On the distribution of the roots of certain determinantal equations, Ann. Eugenics 9 (1939), 250-258.
14. L.C. HSU: A theorem on the asymptotic behaviour of a multiple integral, Duke Math. J. 15 (1948), 623-632.
15. A.T. JAMES: Normal multivariate analysis and the orthogonal group, Ann. Math. Statist. 25 (1954), 40-75.
16. A.T. JAMES: The non-central Wishart distribution, Proc. Roy. Soc. (London) Ser. A 229 (1955), 364-366.



17. A.T. JAMES: A generating function for averages over the orthogonal group, Proc. Roy. Soc. (London) Ser. A 229 (1955), 367-375.
18. A.T. JAMES: The distribution of the latent roots of the covariance matrix, Ann. Math. Statist. 31 (1960), 151-158.
19. A.T. JAMES: Zonal polynomials of the real positive definite symmetric matrices, Ann. of Math. 74 (1961), 456-469.
20. A.T. JAMES: The distribution of non-central means with known covariance, Ann. Math. Statist. 32 (1961), 874-882.
21. A.T. JAMES: Distribution of matrix variates and latent roots derived from normal samples, Ann. Math. Statist. 35 (1964), 475-501.
22. A.T. JAMES: Inference on latent roots by calculation of hypergeometric functions of matrix argument, "Multivariate Analysis", Ed. by P.R. Krishnaiah, Academic Press (1966).
23. A.T. JAMES: Tests of equality of latent roots of the covariance matrix, International Symposium (July 1968), Dayton, Ohio.
24. A.T. JAMES: Calculation of zonal polynomial coefficients by use of the Laplace-Beltrami operator, Ann. Math. Statist. 39 (1968), 1711-1718.

25. C.G. KHATRI and K.C.S. PILLAI: On the non-central distributions of two test criteria in multivariate analysis of variance, *Ann. Math. Statist.* 39 (1968), 215-226.
26. D.N. LAWLEY: Tests of significance in canonical analysis, *Biometrika* 46 (1959), 59-66.
27. R.J. MUIRHEAD: Systems of partial differential equations for hypergeometric functions of matrix argument, (submitted to *Ann. Math. Statist.*).
28. K.C.S. PILLAI and A.K. GUPTA: On the non-central distribution of the second elementary symmetric function of the roots of a matrix, *Ann. Math. Statist.* 39 (1968), 833-839.
29. EARL D. RAINVILLE: "Special Functions" p 212, The Macmillan Company (1960), New York.
30. C.R. RAO: "Linear Statistical Inference and its Applications", John Wiley and Sons (1965).
31. S.N. ROY:  $p$ -statistics or some generalisations in analysis of variance appropriate to multivariate problems, *Sankhyā* 4 (1939), 381-396.
32. B.L. van der WAERDEN: "Modern Algebra. Volume I" (English translation), Frederick Ungar Publishing Co. (1949), New York.

33. M. WEIBULL: The distribution of t- and F-statistics and of correlation and regression coefficients in stratified samples from normal populations with different means, Skand. Aktuarietidskr. 36 Supple. (1953), 1-106.
34. J. WISHART: The generalised product moment distribution in samples from a normal multivariate population, Biometrika 20 (1928), 32-43.